

# PROJECT MANUAL

*Replace HVAC & Boiler  
Riverbend Treatment Center  
St. Joseph, MO, Missouri*

Designed By: Crossed Swords Engineering  
1619 NE Oak Tree Drive  
Lee's Summit, MO, 64086

Date Issued: May 17, 2023

Project No.: H2305-01

STATE *of* MISSOURI

---

OFFICE *of* ADMINISTRATION  
Facilities Management, Design & Construction

---

**SECTION 000107 - PROFESSIONAL SEALS AND CERTIFICATIONS**

**PROJECT NUMBER: H2305-01 Replace HVAC and Boiler Multiple Assets.  
Riverbend Treatment Center. St. Joseph, MO.**

**THE FOLLOWING DESIGN PROFESSIONALS HAVE SIGNED AND SEALED  
THE ORIGINAL PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR THIS PROJECT,  
WHICH ARE ON FILE WITH THE DIVISION OF FACILITIES  
MANAGEMENT, DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION:**



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

SECTION	TITLE	NUMBER OF PAGES
---------	-------	-----------------

**DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING INFORMATION**

**000000 INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION**

000101	Project Manual Cover	1
000107	Professional Seals and Certifications	1
000110	Table of Contents	2
000115	List of Drawings	1

<b>001116</b>	<b>INVITATION FOR BID (IFB) plus Missouri Buys instructions and special notice</b>	<b>3</b>
---------------	--	----------

<b>002113</b>	<b>INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS (Includes MBE/WBE/SDVE Information)</b>	<b>8</b>
---------------	--	----------

003144	MBE/WBE/SDVE Directory	1
--------	------------------------	---

**\*\*The following documents may be found on MissouriBUYS at <https://missouribuys.mo.gov/>\*\***

**004000 PROCUREMENT FORMS & SUPPLEMENTS**

004113	Bid Form	*
004336	Proposed Subcontractors Form	*
004337	MBE/WBE/SDVE Compliance Evaluation Form	*
004338	MBE/WBE/SDVE Eligibility Determination Form for Joint Ventures	*
004339	MBE/WBE/SDVE Good Faith Effort (GFE) Determination Forms	*
004340	SDVE Business Form	*
004541	Affidavit of Work Authorization	*
004545	Anti-Discrimination Against Israel Act Certification form	*

**005000 CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS**

005213	Construction Contract	3
005414	Affidavit for Affirmative Action	1

**006000 PROJECT FORMS**

006113	Performance and Payment Bond	2
006325	Product Substitution Request	2
006519.16	Final Receipt of Payment and Release Form	1
006519.18	MBE/WBE/SDVE Progress Report	2
006519.21	Affidavit of Compliance with Prevailing Wage Law	1

**007000 CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT**

007213	General Conditions	20
007300	Supplementary Conditions	1
007346	Wage Rate	4

**DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

011000	Summary of Work	2
012100	Allowances	2
012600	Contract Modification Procedures	2
013100	Coordination	3
013115	Project Management Communications	4
013200	Schedules-Bar Chart	2
013300	Submittals	7
013513.19	Site Security and Health Requirements	5
015000	Construction Facilities and Temporary Controls	7
017400	Cleaning	3
017900	Demonstration and Training.	6

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX:**

**DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

024119	Selective Demolition	5
--------	----------------------	---

**DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete	6
--------	------------------------	---

SECTION 000110 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

9/9/20

<b>DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION</b>		
078413	Penetration Firestopping	3
079200	Joint Sealants	6
<b>DIVISION 09 – FINISHES</b>		
099113	Exterior Painting	7
099123	Interior Painting	6
<b>DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING</b>		
230500	Common Work Results for HVAC	9
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment	3
230519	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping	6
230523	Valves for HVAC Piping	7
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment	8
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment	4
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	11
230700	HVAC Insulation	20
230923	Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC	68
230923.11	Control Valves	9
230923.14	Flow Instruments	17
230923.23	Pressure Instruments	10
230923.27	Temperature Instruments	13
230993	Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC	8
231123	Natural Gas Piping	8
232113	Hydronic Piping	8
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties	4
232123	Hydronic Pumps	3
232300	Refrigerant Piping	8
232500	HVAC Water Treatment	3
233113	Metal Ducts	9
233300	Air Duct Accessories	7
235216	Condensing Boilers	6
235513.16	Gas-Fired Duct Heaters	4
237313	Modular Indoor Central Station Air Handling Units	7
<b>DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL</b>		
260500	Common Work Results for Electrical	3
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	5
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	3
260533	Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems	9
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	4
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	4
262923	Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers	8

## SECTION 000115 – LIST OF DRAWINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section provides a comprehensive list of the drawings that comprise the Bid Documents for this project.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 LIST OF DRAWINGS

- A. The following list of drawings is a part of the Bid Documents:

	<u>TITLE</u>	<u>SHEET #</u>	<u>DATE</u>	<u>CAD #</u>
1.	COVER SHEET	SHEET G-001	5/17/2023	G-001
2.	MECHANICAL LEGEND AND NOTES	SHEET M-001	5/17/2023	M-001
3.	MECHANICAL PLAN CORE BUILDING	SHEET M-101	5/17/2023	M-101
4.	MECHANICAL PLAN HOUSING UNITS	SHEET M-102	5/17/2023	M-102
5.	MECHANICAL DETAILS	SHEET M-501	5/17/2023	M-501
6.	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES NEW EQUIPMENT	SHEET M-601	5/17/2023	M-601
7.	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES EXISTING EQUIPMENT	SHEET M-602	5/17/2023	M-602

**END OF SECTION 000115**

## SECTION 001116 - INVITATION FOR BID

### 1.0 OWNER:

- A. The State of Missouri  
Office of Administration,  
Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction  
Jefferson City, Missouri

### 2.0 PROJECT TITLE AND NUMBER:

- A. Replace HVAC & Boiler  
Riverbend Treatment Center  
St. Joseph, MO, Missouri  
**Project No.: H2305-01**

### 3.0 BIDS WILL BE RECEIVED:

- A. Until: 1:30 PM, Thursday, June 29, 2023
- B. **Only electronic bids on MissouriBUYS shall be accepted: <https://missouribuys.mo.gov>. Bidder must be registered to bid.**

### 4.0 DESCRIPTION:

- A. Scope: The project includes the replacement of HVAC Equipment and the Boiler System at Riverbend Treatment Center.
- B. MBE/WBE/SDVE Goals: MBE 10%, WBE 10%, and SDVE 3%. **NOTE: Only MBE/WBE firms certified by the State of Missouri Office of Equal Opportunity as of the date of bid opening, or SDVE(s) meeting the requirements of Section 34.074, RSMo and 1 CSR 30-5.010, can be used to satisfy the MBE/WBE/SDVE participation goals for this project.**
- C. **\*\*NOTE:** Bidders are provided new Good Faith Effort (GFE) forms on MissouriBUYS.

### 5.0 PRE-BID MEETING:

- A. Place/Time: 1:00 PM, Wednesday, June 14, 2023, at Riverbend Treatment Center, 5910 Mitchell Ave., St. Joseph, MO 64507.
- B. Access to State of Missouri property requires presentation of a photo ID by all persons

### 6.0 HOW TO GET PLANS & SPECIFICATIONS:

- A. View Only Electronic bid sets are available at no cost or paper bid sets for a deposit of \$30.00 from American Document Solutions (ADS). MAKE CHECKS PAYABLE TO: American Document Solutions. Mail to: American Document Solutions, 1400 Forum Blvd., Suite 7A, Columbia, Missouri 65203. Phone 573-446-7768, Fax 573-355-5433, <https://www.adsplanroom.net>. NOTE: Prime contractors will be allowed a maximum of two bid sets at the deposit rate shown above. Other requesters will be allowed only one bid set at this rate. Additional bid sets or parts thereof may be obtained by any bidder at the cost of printing and shipping by request to American Document Solutions at the address shown above. **Bidder must secure at least one bid set to become a planholder.**
- B. **Refunds: Return plans and specifications in unmarked condition within 15 working days of bid opening to American Document Solutions, 1400 Forum Blvd., Suite 7A, Columbia, Missouri 65203. Phone 573-446-7768, Fax 573-355-5433. Deposits for plans not returned within 15 working days shall be forfeited.**
- C. Information for upcoming bids, including downloadable plans, specifications, Invitation for Bid, bid tabulation, award, addenda, and access to the ADS planholders list, is available on the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction's web site: <https://oa.mo.gov/facilities/bid-opportunities/bid-listing-electronic-plans>.

### 7.0 POINT OF CONTACT:

- A. Designer: Crossed Swords Engineering, Robert Schmitt, 816-309-0099, email: [Robert7721@aol.com](mailto:Robert7721@aol.com)
- B. Project Manager: Christopher Lloyd, 573-526-0160, email: [Christopher.Lloyd@oa.mo.gov](mailto:Christopher.Lloyd@oa.mo.gov)

### 8.0 GENERAL INFORMATION:

- A. The State reserves the right to reject any and all bids and to waive all informalities in bids. No bid may be withdrawn for a period of 20 working days subsequent to the specified bid opening time. The contractor shall pay not less than the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed, as determined by the Missouri Department of Labor and Industrial Relations and as set out in the detailed plans and specifications.
- B. Bid results will be available at <https://oa.mo.gov/facilities/bid-opportunities/bid-listing-electronic-plans> after it is verified that at least one bid is awardable and affordable.

## Very Important MissouriBUYS Instructions to Help Submit a Bid Correctly

- A. The bidder shall submit his or her bid and all supporting documentation on MissouriBUYS eProcurement System. No hard copy bids shall be accepted. Go to <https://missouribuys.mo.gov> and register. The bidder must register and complete a profile fully with all required documents submitted prior to submitting a bid.
- B. Once registered, log in.
1. Under "Solicitation" select "View Current Solicitations."
  2. Under "Filter by Agency" select "OA-FMDC-Contracts Chapter 8", then click "Filter Solicitation" button.
  3. Select "Active Solicitations" tab.
  4. To see the Solicitation Summary, click on the Project Number and the summary will open. Click each heading to open detailed information.
- C. Here are simplified instructions for uploading the bid to MissouriBUYS:
1. Find the solicitation by completing Steps 1 through 4 above.
  2. Select the three dots under "Actions." Select "Add New Response."
  3. When the Quote box opens, give the response a title and select "OK."
  4. The detailed solicitation will open. Select "Check All" for the Original Solicitation Documents, open each document, and select "Accept." If this step is not completed, a bid cannot be uploaded. Scroll to the bottom of the page and select "Add Attachments." If you do not see this command, not all documents have been opened and accepted.
  5. The Supplier Attachments box will open. Select "Add Attachment" again.
  6. The Upload Documents box will open. Read the instructions for uploading. Disregard the "Confidential" check box.
  7. Browse and attach up to 5 files at a time. Scroll to bottom of box and select "Upload." The Supplier Attachments box will open. Repeat Steps 5 through 7 if more than 5 files are to be uploaded.
  8. When the Supplier Attachments box opens again and uploading is complete, select "Done." A message should appear that the upload is successful. If it does not, go to the Bidder Response tab and select "Submit."
  9. The detailed solicitation will open. At the bottom select "Close."
- D. Any time a bidder wants to modify the bid, he or she will have to submit a new one. FMDC will open the last response the bidder submits. The bidder may revise and submit the bid up to the close of the solicitation (bid date and time). Be sure to allow for uploading time so that the bid is successfully uploaded prior to the 1:30 PM deadline; we can only accept the bid if it is uploaded before the deadline.
- E. If you want to verify that you are uploading documents correctly, please contact Paul Girouard: 573-751-4797, [paul.girouard@oa.mo.gov](mailto:paul.girouard@oa.mo.gov) ; April Howser: 573-751-0053, [April.Howser@oa.mo.gov](mailto:April.Howser@oa.mo.gov) ; or Mandy Roberson: 573-522-0074, [Mandy.Roberson@oa.mo.gov](mailto:Mandy.Roberson@oa.mo.gov).
- F. If you are experiencing login issues, please contact Web Procure Support (Proactis) at 866-889-8533 anytime from 7:00 AM to 7:00 PM Central Time, Monday through Friday. If you try using a userid or password several times that is incorrect, the system will lock you out. Web Procure Support is the only option to unlock you! If you forget your userid or password, Web Procure Support will provide a temporary userid or password. Also, if it has been a while since your last successful login and you receive an "inactive" message, contact Web Procure (Proactis). If you are having a registration issue, you may contact Cathy Holliday at 573-751-3491 or by email: [cathy.holliday@oa.mo.gov](mailto:cathy.holliday@oa.mo.gov).

## IMPORTANT REMINDER REGARDING REQUIREMENT FOR OEO CERTIFICATION

A. SECTION 002113 – INSTRUCTIONS TO  
BIDDERS: Article 15.0, Section D1:

**As of July 1, 2020**, all MBE, WBE, and MBE/WBE contractors, subcontractors, and suppliers must be certified by the State of Missouri, Office of Equal Opportunity. No certifications from other Missouri certifying agencies will be accepted.



## **SECTION 002113 – INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

### **1.0 - SPECIAL NOTICE TO BIDDERS**

- A. If awarded a contract, the Bidder's employees, and the employees of all subcontractors, who perform the work on the project must adhere to requirements in Section 013513 – Site Security and Health Requirements as applicable per Agency.
- B. The Bidder's prices shall include all city, state, and federal sales, excise, and similar taxes that may lawfully be assessed in connection with the performance of work, and the purchased of materials to be incorporated in the work. THIS PROJECT IS NOT TAX EXEMPT.

### **2.0 - BID DOCUMENTS**

- A. The number of sets obtainable by any one (1) party may be limited in accordance with available supply.
- B. For the convenience of contractors, sub-contractors and suppliers, copies of construction documents are on file at the office of the Director, Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction and on the Division's web site - <https://oa.mo.gov/facilities/bid-opportunities/bid-listing-electronic-plans>.

### **3.0 - BIDDERS' OBLIGATIONS**

- A. Bidders must carefully examine the entire site of the work and shall make all reasonable and necessary investigations to inform themselves thoroughly as to the facilities available as well as to all the difficulties involved in the completion of all work in accordance with the specifications and the plans. Bidders are also required to examine all maps, plans and data mentioned in the specifications. No plea of ignorance concerning observable existing conditions or difficulties that may be encountered in the execution of the work under this contract will be accepted as an excuse for any failure or omission on the part of the contractor to fulfill in every detail all of the requirements of the contract, nor accepted as a basis for any claims for extra compensation.
- B. Under no circumstances will contractors give their plans and specifications to another contractor. Any bid received from a contractor whose name does not appear on the list of plan holders may be subject to rejection.

### **4.0 - INTERPRETATIONS**

- A. No bidder shall be entitled to rely on oral interpretations as to the meaning of the plans and specifications or the acceptability of alternate products, materials, form or type of construction. Every request for interpretation shall be made in writing and submitted with all supporting documents not less than five (5) working days before opening of bids. Every interpretation made to a bidder will be in the form of an addendum and will be sent as promptly as is practicable to all persons to whom plans and specifications have been issued. All such addenda shall become part of the contract documents.
- B. Approval for an "acceptable substitution" issued in the form of an addendum as per Paragraph 4A above, and as per Article 3.1 of the General Conditions; ACCEPTABLE SUBSTITUTIONS shall constitute approval for use in the project of the product.
- C. An "acceptable substitution" requested after the award of bid shall be approved if proven to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Designer as per Article 3.1, that the product is acceptable in design, strength, durability, usefulness, and convenience for the purpose intended. Approval of the substitution after award is at the sole discretion of the Owner.
- D. A request for "Acceptable Substitutions" shall be made on the Section 006325 Substitution Request Form. The request shall be sent directly to the project Designer. A copy of said request should also be mailed to the Owner, Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction, Post Office Box 809, Jefferson City, Missouri 65102.

## **5.0 - BIDS AND BIDDING PROCEDURE**

- A. Bidders shall submit all submission forms and accompanying documents listed in SECTION 004113 – BID FORM, Article 5.0, ATTACHMENTS TO BID by the stated time or their bid will be rejected for being non-responsive.

Depending on the specific project requirements, **the following is a GENERIC list** of all possible bid forms that may be due with bid submittals and times when they may be due. Please check for specific project requirements on the proposal form (Section 004113). ***Not all of the following bid forms may be required to be submitted.***

### **Bid Submittal – due before stated date and time of bid opening (see IFB):**

004113	Bid Form (all pages are always required)
004322	Unit Prices Form
004336	Proposed Subcontractors Form
004337	MBE/WBE/SDVE Compliance Evaluation Form
004338	MBE/WBE/SDVE Eligibility Determination for Joint Ventures
004339	MBE/WBE/SDVE GFE Determination
004340	SDVE Business Form
004541	Affidavit of Work Authorization
004545	Anti-Discrimination Against Israel Act Certification form

- B. All bids shall be submitted without additional terms and conditions, modification or reservation on the bid forms with each space properly filled. Bids not on these forms will be rejected.
- C. All bids shall be accompanied by a bid bond executed by the bidder and a duly authorized surety company, certified check, cashier's check or bank draft made payable to the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction, State of Missouri, in the amount indicated on the bid form, Section 004113. Failure of the contractor to submit the full amount required shall be sufficient cause to reject his bid. The bidder agrees that the proceeds of the check, draft or bond shall become the property of the State of Missouri, if for any reason the bidder withdraws his bid after closing, or if on notification of award refuses or is unable to execute tendered contract, provide an acceptable performance and payment bond, provide evidence of required insurance coverage and/or provide required copies of affirmative action plans within ten (10) working days after such tender.
- D. The check or draft submitted by the successful bidder will be returned after the receipt of an acceptable performance and payment bond and execution of the formal contract. Checks or drafts of all other bidders will be returned within a reasonable time after it is determined that the bid represented by same will receive no further consideration by the State of Missouri. Bid bonds will only be returned upon request.

## **6.0 - SIGNING OF BIDS**

- A. A bid from an individual shall be signed as noted on the Bid Form.
- B. A bid from a partnership or joint venture shall require only one signature of a partner, an officer of the joint venture authorized to bind the venture or an attorney-in-fact. If the bid is signed by an officer of a joint venture or an attorney-in-fact, a document evidencing the individual's authority to execute contracts should be included with the bid form.
- C. A bid from a limited liability company (LLC) shall be signed by a manager or a managing member of the LLC.
- D. A bid from a corporation shall have the correct corporate name thereon and the signature of an authorized officer of the corporation manually written. Title of office held by the person signing for the corporation shall appear, along with typed name of said individual. Corporate license number shall be provided and, if a corporation organized in a state other than Missouri, a Certificate of Authority to do business in the State of Missouri shall be attached. In addition, for corporate proposals, the President or Vice-President should sign as the bidder. If the signator is other than the corporate president or vice president, the bidder must provide satisfactory evidence that the signator has the legal authority to bind the corporation.

- E. A bid should contain the full and correct legal name of the Bidder. If the Bidder is an entity registered with the Missouri Secretary of State, the Bidder's name on the bid form should appear as shown in the Secretary of State's records.
- F. The Bidder should include its corporate license number on the Bid Form and, if the corporation is organized in a state other than Missouri, a Certificate of Authority to do business in the State of Missouri shall be attached to the bid form.

#### **7.0 - RECEIVING BID SUBMITTALS**

- A. It is the bidder's sole responsibility to assure receipt by Owner of bid submittals by the date and time specified in the Invitation for Bid. Bids received after the date and time specified shall not be considered by the Owner.
- B. Bids must be submitted through the MissouriBUYS statewide eProcurement system (<https://www.missouribuys.mo.gov/>) in accordance with the instructions for that system. The Owner shall only accept bids submitted through MissouriBUYS. Bids received by the Owner through any other means, including hard copies, shall not be considered and will be discarded by the Owner unopened.
- C. To respond to an Invitation for Bid, the Bidder must first register with MissouriBUYS by going through the MissouriBUYS Home Page (<https://www.missouribuys.mo.gov/>), clicking the "Register" button at the top of the page, and completing the Vendor Registration. Once registered, the Bidder accesses its account by clicking the "Login" button at the top of the MissouriBUYS Home Page. Enter your USERID and PASSWORD, which the Bidder will select. Under Solicitations, select "View Current Solicitations." A new screen will open. Under "Filter by Agency" select "OA-FMDC-Contracts Chapter 8." Under "Filter by Opp. No." type in the State Project Number. Select "Submit." Above the dark blue bar, select "Other Active Opportunities." To see the Solicitation Summary, single click the Opp. No. (Project Number) and the summary will open. Single quick click each blue bar to open detailed information. The Bidder must read and accept the Original Solicitation Documents and complete all identified requirements. The Bidder should download and save all of the Original Solicitation Documents on its computer so that the Bidder can prepare its response to these documents. The Bidder should upload its completed response to the downloaded documents as an attachment to the electronic solicitation response.
- D. Step-by-step instructions for how a registered vendor responds to a solicitation electronically are provided in Section 001116 – Invitation For Bid.
- E. The Bidder shall submit its bid on the forms provided by the Owner on MissouriBUYS with each space fully and properly completed, including all amounts required for alternate bids, unit prices, cost accounting data, etc. The Owner may reject bids that are not on the Owner's forms or that do not contain all requested information.
- F. No Contractor shall stipulate in his bid any conditions not contained in the specifications or standard bid form contained in the contract documents. To do so may subject the Contractor's bid to rejection.
- G. The completed forms shall be without interlineations, alterations or erasures.

#### **8.0 - MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS**

- A. Bidder may withdraw his bid at any time prior to scheduled closing time for receipt of bids, but no bidder may withdraw his bid for a period of twenty (20) working days after the scheduled closing time for receipt of bids.
- B. The Bidder shall modify his or her original bid by submitting a revised bid on MissouriBUYS.

#### **9.0 - AWARD OF CONTRACT**

- A. The Owner reserves the right to reject any and/or all bids and further to waive all informalities in bidding when deemed in the best interest of the State of Missouri.
- B. The Owner reserves the right to let other contracts in connection with the work, including but not by way of limitation, contracts for the furnishing and installation of furniture, equipment, machines, appliances and other apparatus.

- C. The Owner shall award a contract to the lowest, responsive, responsible Bidder in accordance with Section 8.250, RSMo. No contract will be awarded to any Bidder who has had a contract with the Owner terminated within the preceding twelve months for material breach of contract or who has been suspended or debarred by the Owner.
- D. Award of alternates, if any, will be made in numerical order unless all bids received are such that the order of acceptance of alternates does not affect the determination of the lowest, responsive, responsible bidder.
- E. No bid shall be considered binding upon the Owner until the written contract has been properly executed, a satisfactory bond has been furnished, evidence of required insurance coverage, submittal of executed Section 004541, Affidavit of Work Authorization form, documentation evidencing enrollment and participation in a federal work authorization program has been received and an affirmative action plan submitted. Failure to execute and return the contract and associated documents within the prescribed period of time shall be treated, at the option of the Owner, as a breach of bidder's obligation and the Owner shall be under no further obligation to bidder.
- F. If the successful bidder is doing business in the State of Missouri under a fictitious name, he shall furnish to Owner, attached to the Bid Form, a properly certified copy of the certificate of Registration of Fictitious Name from the State of Missouri, and such certificate shall remain on file with the Owner.
- G. Any successful bidder which is a corporation organized in a state other than Missouri shall furnish to the Owner, attached to the Bid Form, a properly certified copy of its current Certificate of Authority to do business in the State of Missouri, such certificate to remain on file with the Owner. No contract will be awarded by the Owner unless such certificate is furnished by the bidder.
- H. Any successful bidder which is a corporation organized in the State of Missouri shall furnish at its own cost to the Owner, if requested, a Certificate of Good Standing issued by the Secretary of State, such certificate to remain on file with the Owner.
- I. Transient employers subject to Sections 285.230 and 285.234, RSMo, (out-of-state employers who temporarily transact any business in the State of Missouri) may be required to file a bond with the Missouri Department of Revenue. No contract will be awarded by the Owner unless the successful bidder certifies that he has complied with all applicable provisions of Section 285.230-234.
- J. Sections 285.525 and 285.530, RSMo, require business entities to enroll and participate in a federal work authorization program in order to be eligible to receive award of any state contract in excess of \$5,000. Bidders should submit with their bid an Affidavit of Work Authorization (Section 004541) along with appropriate documentation evidencing such enrollment and participation. Section-004541, Affidavit of Work Authorization is located on the MissouriBUYS solicitation for this project. Bidders must also submit an E-Verify Memorandum before the Owner may award a contract to the Bidder. Information regarding an E-Verify is located at <https://www.uscis.gov/e-verify/>. The contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that all subcontractors and suppliers associated with this contract enroll in E-Verify.

#### **10.0 - CONTRACT SECURITY**

- A. The successful bidder shall furnish a performance/payment bond as set forth in General Conditions Article 6.1 on a condition prior to the State executing the contract and issuing a notice to proceed.

#### **11.0 - LIST OF SUBCONTRACTORS**

- A. If required by "Section 004113 – Bid Form," each bidder must submit as part of their bid a list of subcontractors to be used in performing the work (Section 004336). The list must specify the name of the single designated subcontractor, for each category of work listed in "Section 004336 - Proposed Subcontractors Form." If work within a category will be performed by more than one subcontractor, the bidder must provide the name of each subcontractor and specify the exact portion of the work to be done by each. Failure to list the Bidder's firm, or a subcontractor for each category of work identified on the Bid Form or the listing of more than one subcontractor for any category without designating the portion of work to be performed by each shall be cause for rejection of the bid. If the bidder intends to perform any of the designated subcontract work with the use of his own employees, the bidder shall make that fact clear, by listing his own firm for the subject category. **If any category of work is left vacant, the bid shall be rejected.**

## **12.0 - WORKING DAYS**

- A. Contract duration time is stated in working days and will use the following definition in determining the actual calendar date for contract completion:
  - 1. Working days are defined as all calendar days except Saturdays, Sundays and the following State of Missouri observed holidays: New Year's Day, Martin Luther King, Jr. Day, Lincoln Day, Washington's Birthday, Truman Day, Memorial Day, Juneteenth, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans Day, Thanksgiving Day and Christmas Day.

## **13.0 - AMERICAN AND MISSOURI - MADE PRODUCTS AND FIRMS**

- A. By signing the bid form and submitting a bid on this project, the Bidder certifies that it will use American and Missouri products as set forth in Article 1.7 of the General Conditions. Bidders are advised to review those requirements carefully prior to bidding.
- B. A preference shall be given to Missouri firms, corporations or individuals, or firms, corporations or individuals that maintain Missouri offices or places of business, when the quality of performance promised is equal or better and the price quoted is the same or less.
- C. Pursuant to Section 34.076, RSMo, a contractor or Bidder domiciled outside the boundaries of the State of Missouri shall be required, in order to be successful, to submit a bid the same percent less than the lowest bid submitted by a responsible contractor or Bidder domiciled in Missouri as would be required for such a Missouri domiciled contractor or Bidder to succeed over the bidding contractor or Bidder domiciled outside Missouri on a like contract or bid being let in the person's domiciliary state and, further, the contractor or Bidder domiciled outside the boundaries of Missouri shall be required to submit an audited financial statement as would be required of a Missouri domiciled contractor or Bidder on a like contract or bid being let in the domiciliary state of that contractor or Bidder.

## **14.0 – ANTI-DISCRIMINATION AGAINST ISRAEL ACT CERTIFICATION:**

- A. Pursuant to section 34.600, RSMo, if the Bidder meets the section 34.600, RSMo, definition of a “company” and the Bidder has ten or more employees, the Bidder must certify in writing that the Bidder is not currently engaged in a boycott of goods or services from the State of Israel as defined in section 34.600, RSMo, and shall not engage in a boycott of goods or services from the State of Israel, if awarded a contract, for the duration of the contract. The Bidder is requested to complete and submit the applicable portion of Section 004545 - Anti-Discrimination Against Israel Act Certification with their Bid Form. The applicable portion of the exhibit must be submitted prior to execution of a contract by the Owner and issuance of Notice to Proceed. If the exhibit is not submitted, the Owner shall rescind its Intent to Award and move to the next lowest, responsive, responsible bidder.

## **15.0 - MBE/WBE/SDVE INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. “**MBE**” means a Minority Business Enterprise.
  - 2. “**MINORITY**” has the same meaning as set forth in 1 C.S.R. 10-17.010.
  - 3. “**MINORITY BUSINESS ENTERPRISE**” has the same meaning as set forth in section 37.020, RSMo.
  - 4. “**WBE**” means a Women’s Business Enterprise.
  - 5. “**WOMEN’S BUSINESS ENTERPRISE**” has the same meaning as set forth in section 37.020, RSMo.
  - 6. “**SDVE**” means a Service-Disabled Veterans Enterprise.
  - 7. “**SERVICE-DISABLED VETERAN**” has the same meaning as set forth in section 34.074, RSMo.
  - 8. “**SERVICE-DISABLED VETERAN ENTERPRISE**” has the same meaning as “Service-Disabled Veteran Business” set forth in section 34.074, RSMo.

B. MBE/WBE/SDVE General Requirements:

1. For all bids greater than \$100,000, the Bidder shall obtain MBE, WBE and SDVE participation in an amount equal to or greater than the percentage goals set forth in the Invitation for Bid and the Bid Form, unless the Bidder is granted a Good Faith Effort waiver by the Director of the Division, as set forth below. If the Bidder does not meet the MBE, WBE and SDVE goals, or make a good faith effort to do so, the Bidder shall be non-responsive, and its bid shall be rejected.
2. The Bidder should submit with its bid all of the information requested in the MBE/WBE/SDVE Compliance Evaluation Form for every MBE, WBE, or SDVE subcontractor or material supplier the Bidder intends to use for the contract work. The Bidder is required to submit all appropriate MBE/WBE/SDVE documentation before the stated time and date set forth in the Invitation for Bid. If the Bidder fails to provide such information by the specified date and time, the Owner shall reject the bid.
3. The Director reserves the right to request additional information from a Bidder to clarify the Bidder's proposed MBE, WBE, and/or SDVE participation. The Bidder shall submit the clarifying information requested by the Owner within two (2) Working Days of receiving the request for clarification.
4. Pursuant to section 34.074, RSMo, a Bidder that is a SDVE doing business as Missouri firm, corporation, or individual, or that maintains a Missouri office or place of business, shall receive a three-point bonus preference in the contract award evaluation process. The bonus preference will be calculated and applied by reducing the bid amount of the eligible SDVE by three percent of the apparent low responsive bidder's bid. Based on this calculation, if the eligible SDVE's evaluation is less than the apparent low responsive bidder's bid, the eligible SDVE's bid becomes the apparent low responsive bid. This reduction is for evaluation purposes only, and will have no impact on the actual amount(s) of the bid or the amount(s) of any contract awarded. In order to be eligible for the SDVE preference, the Bidder must complete and submit with its bid the Missouri Service Disabled Veteran Business Form, and any information required by the form. The form is available on the MissouriBUYS solicitation for this project.

C. Computation of MBE/WBE/SDVE Goal Participation:

1. A Bidder who is a MBE, WBE, or SDVE may count 100% of the contract towards the MBE, WBE or SDVE goal, less any amounts awarded to another MBE, WBE or SDVE. (NOTE: A MBE firm that bids as general contractor must obtain WBE and SDVE participation; a WBE firm that bids as a general contractor must obtain MBE and SDVE participation; and a SDVE firm that bids as general contractor must obtain MBE and WBE participation.) In order for the remaining contract amount to be counted towards the MBE, WBE or SDVE goal, the Bidder must complete the MBE/WBE/SDVE Compliance Evaluation Form (Section 004337) identifying itself as an MBE, WBE or SDVE.
2. The total dollar value of the work granted to a certified MBE, WBE or SDVE by the Bidder shall be counted towards the applicable goal.
3. Expenditures for materials and supplies obtained from a certified MBE, WBE, or SDVE supplier or manufacturer may be counted towards the MBE, WBE and SDVE goals, if the MBE, WBE, or SDVE assumes the actual and contractual responsibility for the provision of the materials and supplies.
4. The total dollar value of the work granted to a second or subsequent tier subcontractor or a supplier may be counted towards a Bidder's MBE, WBE and SDVE goals, if the MBE, WBE, or SDVE properly assumes the actual and contractual responsibility for the work.
5. The total dollar value of work granted to a certified joint venture equal to the percentage of the ownership and control of the MBE, WBE, or SDVE partner in the joint venture may be counted towards the MBE/WBE/SDVE goals.
6. Only expenditures to a MBE, WBE, or SDVE that performs a commercially useful function in the work may be counted towards the MBE, WBE and SDVE goals. A MBE, WBE, or SDVE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for executing a distinct element of the work and carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing and supervising the work or providing supplies or manufactured materials.

D. Certification of MBE/WBE/SDVE Subcontractors:

1. In order to be counted towards the goals, an MBE or WBE must be certified by the State of Missouri Office of Equal Opportunity and an SDVE must be certified by the State of Missouri, Office of Administration, Division of Purchasing and Material Management or by the Department of Veterans Affairs.
2. The Bidder may determine the certification status of a proposed MBE or WBE subcontractor or supplier by referring to the Office of Equal Opportunity (OEO)'s online MBE/WBE directory (<https://apps1.mo.gov/MWBCertifiedFirms/>). The Bidder may determine the eligibility of a SDVE subcontractor or supplier by referring to the Division of Purchasing and Materials Management's online SDVE directory (<https://oa.mo.gov/sites/default/files/sdvelisting.pdf>) or the Department of Veterans Affairs' directory (<https://vetbiz.va.gov/basic-search/>).
3. Additional information, clarifications, etc., regarding the listings in the directories may be obtained by calling the Division at (573)751-3339 and asking to speak to the Contract Specialist of record as shown in the Supplementary Conditions (Section 007300).

E. Waiver of MBE/WBE/SDVE Participation:

1. If a Bidder has made a good faith effort to secure the required MBE, WBE and/or SDVE participation and has failed, the Bidder shall submit with its bid the information requested in MBE/WBE/SDVE Good Faith Effort (GFE) Determination form. The GFE forms are located on the MissouriBUYS solicitation for this project. The Director will determine if the Bidder made a good faith effort to meet the applicable goals. If the Director determines that the Bidder did not make a good faith effort, the bid shall be rejected as being nonresponsive to the bid requirements. Bidders who demonstrate that they have made a good faith effort to include MBE, WBE, and/or SDVE participation will be determined to be responsive to the applicable participation goals, regardless of the percent of actual participation obtained, if the bid is otherwise acceptable.
2. In determining whether a Bidder has made a good faith effort to obtain MBE, WBE and/or SDVE participation, the Director may evaluate the factors set forth in 1 CSR 30-5.010(6)(C) and the following:
  - a. The amount of actual participation obtained;
  - b. How and when the Bidder contacted potential MBE, WBE, and SDVE subcontractors and suppliers;
  - c. The documentation provided by the Bidder to support its contacts, including whether the Bidder provided the names, addresses, phone numbers, and dates of contact for MBE/WBE/SDVE firms contacted for specific categories of work;
  - d. If project information, including plans and specifications, were provided to MBE/WBE/SDVE subcontractors;
  - e. Whether the Bidder made any attempts to follow-up with MBE, WBE or SDVE firms prior to bid;
  - f. Amount of bids received from any of the subcontractors and/or suppliers that the Bidder contacted;
  - g. The Bidder's stated reasons for rejecting any bids;
3. If no bidder has obtained any participation in a particular category (MBE/WBE/SDVE) or made a good faith effort to do so, the Director may waive that goal rather than rebid.

F. Contractor MBE/WBE/SDVE Obligations

1. If awarded a contract, the Bidder will be contractually required to subcontract with or obtain materials from the MBE, WBE, and SDVE firms listed in its bid, in amounts equal to or greater than the dollar amount bid, unless the amount is modified in writing by the Owner.
2. If the Contractor fails to meet or maintain the participation requirements contained in the Contractor's bid, the Contractor must satisfactorily explain to the Director why it cannot comply with the requirement and why failing meeting the requirement was beyond the Contractor's control. If the Director finds the Contractor's explanation unsatisfactory, the Director may take any appropriate action including, but not limited to:
  - a. Declaring the Contractor ineligible to participate in any contracts with the Division for up to twelve (12) months (suspension); and/or
  - b. Declaring the Contractor be non-responsive to the Invitation for Bid, or in breach of contract and rejecting the bid or terminating the contract.
3. If the Contractor replaces an MBE, WBE, or SDVE during the course of this contract, the Contractor shall replace it with another MBE, WBE, or SDVE or make a good faith effort to do so. All MBE, WBE and SDVE substitutions must be approved by the Director.
4. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with regular reports on its progress in meeting its MBE/WBE/SDVE obligations. At a minimum, the Contractor shall report the dollar-value of work completed by each MBE, WBE, or SDVE during the preceding month and the cumulative total of work completed by each MBE, WBE or SDVE to date with each monthly application for payment. The Contractor shall also make a final report, which shall include the total dollar-value of work completed by each MBE, WBE, and SDVE during the entire contract.



**STATE OF MISSOURI  
DIVISION OF FACILITIES MANAGEMENT,  
DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
*MBE/WBE/SDVE DIRECTORIES***

---

---

The MBE/WBE Directory for goods and services is maintained by the Office of Equal Opportunity (OEO) and is located at the following web address:

<https://apps1.mo.gov/MWBCertifiedFirms/>

The SERVICE DISABLED VETERAN ENTERPRISE (SDVE) Directories may be accessed at the following web addresses:

<https://purch.oa.mo.gov/media/pdf/listing-certified-missouri-service-disabled-veteran-business-enterprises-sdves>

<https://veterans.certify.sba.gov/#search>



# State of Missouri Construction Contract

THIS AGREEMENT is made (DATE) by and between:

## *Contractor Name and Address*

hereinafter called the "Contractor,"

and the **State of Missouri**, hereinafter called the "**Owner**", represented by the Office of Administration, Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction, on behalf of the Department of Social Services/Youth Services.

WITNESSETH, that the Contractor and the Owner, for the consideration stated herein agree as follows:

## **ARTICLE 1. STATEMENT OF WORK**

The Contractor shall furnish all labor and materials and perform all work required for furnishing and installing all labor, materials, equipment and transportation and everything necessarily inferred from the general nature and tendency of the plans and specifications for the proper execution of the work for:

**Project Name:**                    **Replace HVAC & Boiler  
Riverbend Treatment Center  
St. Joseph, MO, Missouri**

**Project Number:**            **H2305-01**

in strict accordance with the Contract Documents as enumerated in Article 7, all of which are made a part hereof.

## **ARTICLE 2. TIME OF COMPLETION**

The contract performance time is **120 working days** from the transmittal date of this agreement. The contract completion date is **MONTH, DAY, YEAR**. This time includes ten (10) working days for the Contractor to receive, sign and return the contract form along with required bonding and insurance certificates. Failure of the Contractor to provide correct bonding and insurance within the ten (10) working days shall not be grounds for a time extension. Receipt of proper bonding and insurance is a condition precedent to the formation of the contract and if not timely received, may result in forfeiture of the Contractor's bid security. Work may not commence until the Owner issues a written Notice to Proceed and must commence within seven (7) working days thereafter.

## **ARTICLE 3. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

Whenever time is mentioned in this contract, time shall be and is of the essence of this contract. The Owner would suffer a loss should the Contractor fail to have the work embraced in this contract fully completed on or before the time above specified. THEREFORE, the parties hereto realize in order to adjust satisfactorily the damages on account of such failure that it might be impossible to compute accurately or estimate the amount of such loss or damages which the Owner would sustain by reason of failure to complete fully said work within the time required by this contract. The Contractor hereby covenants and agrees to pay the Owner, as and for **liquidated damages, the sum of \$700** per day for each and every day, Sunday and legal holidays excepted, during which the work remains incomplete and unfinished. Any sum which may be due the Owner for such damages shall be deducted and retained by the Owner from any balance which may be due the Contractor when said work shall have been finished and accepted. But such provisions shall not release the Bond of the Contractor from liability according to its terms. In case of failure to complete, the Owner will be under no obligation to show or prove any actual or specific loss or damage.

**ARTICLE 4. CONTRACT SUM**

The Owner shall pay the Contractor for the prompt, faithful and efficient performance of the conditions and undertakings of this contract, subject to additions, and deductions as provided herein, in current funds the sum of:

Base Bid: \$

**TOTAL CONTRACT AMOUNT: (\$CONTRACT AMOUNT)**

**ARTICLE 5. PREVAILING WAGE RATE**

**MISSOURI PREVAILING WAGE LAW (Sections 290.210 to 290.340, RSMo):** The Contractor shall pay not less than the specified hourly rate of wages, as set out in the wage order attached to and made part of the specifications for work under this contract, to all workers performing work under the contract, in accordance with sections 290.210 to 290.340, RSMo. The Contractor shall forfeit a penalty to the Owner of one hundred dollars per day (or portion of a day) for each worker that is paid less than the specified rates for any work done under the contract by the Contractor or by any subcontractor, in accordance with section 290.250, RSMo.

**DAVIS-BACON ACT:** If this Project is financed in whole or in part from Federal funds (as indicated in the Instructions to Bidders or other bid or contract documents for this Project), then this contract shall be subject to all applicable federal labor statutes, rules and regulations, including provisions of the Davis-Bacon Act, 40 U.S.C. §3141 et seq., and the “Federal Labor Standards Provisions,” as further set forth in Section 007333 – Supplementary General Conditions for Federally Funded/Assisted Construction Projects, which is incorporated into the contract by reference. Where the Missouri Prevailing Wage Law and the Davis-Bacon Act require payment of different wages for work performed under this contract, the Contractor and all Subcontractors shall pay the greater of the wages required under either law, on a classification by classification basis.

**ARTICLE 6. MINORITY/WOMEN/SERVICE DISABLED VETERAN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE PARTICIPATION**

The Contractor has been granted a waiver of the 10% MBE and 10% WBE and 3% SDVE participation goals. The Contractor agrees to secure the MBE/WBE/SDVE participation amounts for this project as follows: (OR)

The Contractor has met the MBE/WBE/SDVE participation goals and agrees to secure the MBE/WBE/SDVE participation amounts for this project as follows:

MBE/WBE/SDVE Firm: Subcontract Amt:\$  
MBE/WBE/SDVE Firm: Subcontract Amt:\$  
MBE/WBE/SDVE Firm: Subcontract Amt:\$

Total \$

MBE/WBE/SDVE assignments identified above shall not be changed without a contract change signed by the Owner.

The Director of the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction or his Designee shall be the final authority to resolve disputes and disagreements between the Contractor and the MBE/WBE/SDVE firms listed above when such disputes impact the subcontract amounts shown above.

**ARTICLE 7. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

The following documents are hereby incorporated into this contract by reference (all division/section numbers and titles are as utilized in the Project Manual published by the Owner for this Project):

1. Division 0 – Procurement and Contracting Information, including, but not limited to:
  - a. Invitation for Bid (Section 001116)
  - b. Instructions to Bidders (Section 002113)
  - c. Supplementary Instructions to Bidders (if applicable) (Section 002213)
  - d. The following documents as completed and executed by the Contractor and accepted by the Owner, if applicable:
    - i. Bid Form (Section 004113)
    - ii. Proposed Contractors Form (Section 004336)
    - iii. MBE, WBE, SDVE Compliance Evaluation Form(s) (Section 004337)
    - iv. MBE, WBE, SDVE Eligibility Determination Form for Joint Ventures (Section 004338)

- v. MBE, WBE, SDVE Good Faith Effort (GFE) Determination Form (Section 004339)
- vi. Missouri Service Disabled Veteran Business Form (Section 004340)
- vii. Affidavit of Work Authorization (Section 004541)
- viii. Affidavit for Affirmative Action (Section 005414)
- e. Performance and Payment Bond, completed and executed by the Contractor and surety (Section 006113)
- f. General Conditions (Section 007213)
- g. Supplementary Conditions (Section 007300)
- h. Supplementary General Conditions for Federally Funded/Assisted Construction Projects (Section 007333)
- i. Wage Rate(s) (Section 007346)
- 2. Division 1 – General Requirements
- 3. All Drawings identified in the Project Manual
- 4. All Technical Specifications included in the Project Manual
- 5. Addenda, if applicable

**ARTICLE 8 – CERTIFICATION**

By signing this contract, the Contractor hereby re-certifies compliance with all legal requirements set forth in Section 6.0, Bidder’s Certifications of the Bid Form.

Further, if the Contractor provides any “personal information” as defined in §105.1500, RSMo concerning an entity exempt from federal income tax under Section 501(c) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, the Contractor understands and agrees that it is voluntarily choosing to enter into a state contract and providing such information for that purpose. The state will treat such personal information in accord with §105.1500, RSMo.

By signature below, the parties hereby execute this contract document.

**APPROVED:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Brian Yansen, Director  
 Division of Facilities Management,  
 Design and Construction

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Contractor’s Authorized Signature

I, Corporate Secretary, certify that I am Secretary of the corporation named above and that (CONTRACTOR NAME), who signed said contract on behalf of the corporation, was then (TITLE) of said corporation and that said contract was duly signed for and in behalf of the corporation by authority of its governing body, and is within the scope of its corporate powers.

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Corporate Secretary*



STATE OF MISSOURI  
 OFFICE OF ADMINISTRATION  
 DIVISION OF FACILITIES MANAGEMENT, DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
**AFFIDAVIT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION**

PROJECT NUMBER
----------------

NAME
------

First being duly sworn on oath states: that

he/she is the  sole proprietor  partner  officer or  manager or managing member of

NAME
------

a  sole proprietorship  partnership  
 limited liability company (LLC)

or  corporation, and as such, said proprietor, partner, or officer is duly authorized to make this

affidavit on behalf of said sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation; that under the contract known as

PROJECT TITLE
---------------

Less than 50 persons in the aggregate will be employed and therefore, the applicable Affirmative Action requirements as set forth in Article 1.4 of the General Conditions of the State of Missouri have been met.

PRINT NAME & SIGNATURE
------------------------

DATE
------

--

**NOTARY INFORMATION**

NOTARY PUBLIC EMBOSSER SEAL	STATE OF	COUNTY (OR CITY OF ST. LOUIS)	USE RUBBER STAMP IN CLEAR AREA BELOW
	SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN BEFORE ME, THIS		
	DAY OF	YEAR	
	NOTARY PUBLIC SIGNATURE	MY COMMISSION EXPIRES	
NOTARY PUBLIC NAME (TYPED OR PRINTED)			

**SECTION 006113 - PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND FORM**

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, THAT we \_\_\_\_\_

as principal, and \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the

STATE OF MISSOURI. in the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_ )

for payment whereof the Principal and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has, by means of a written agreement dated the \_\_\_\_\_

day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_, enter into a contract with the State of Missouri for

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

(Insert Project Title and Number)

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Principal shall faithfully perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of said contract during the original term of said contract and any extensions thereof that may be granted by the State of Missouri, with or without notice to the Surety and during the life of any guaranty required under the contract; and shall also faithfully perform and fulfill all undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of any and all duly authorized modifications of said contract that may hereafter be made with or without notice to the Surety; and shall also promptly make payment for materials incorporated, consumed or used in connection with the work set forth in the contract referred to above, and all insurance premiums, both compensation and all other kinds of insurance, on said work, and for all labor performed on such work, whether by subcontractor or otherwise, at not less than the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character (exclusive of maintenance work) in the locality in which the work is performed and not less than the prevailing hourly rate of wages for legal holiday and overtime work (exclusive of maintenance work) in the locality in which the work is performed both as determined by the Department of Labor and Industrial Relations or determined by the Court of Appeal, as provided for in said contract and in any and all duly authorized modifications of said contract that may be hereafter made, with or without notice to the Surety, then, this obligation shall be void and of no effect, but it is expressly understood that if the Principal should make default in or should fail to strictly, faithfully and efficiently do, perform and comply with any or more of the covenants, agreements, stipulations, conditions, requirements or undertakings, as specified in or by the terms of said contract, and with the time therein named, then this obligation shall be valid and binding upon each of the parties hereto and this bond shall remain in full force and effect; and the same may be sued on at the instance of any material man, laborer, mechanic, subcontractor, individual, or otherwise to whom such payment is due, in the name of the State of Missouri, to the use of any such person.

AND, IT IS FURTHER specifically provided that any modifications which may hereinafter be made in the terms of the contract or in the work to be done under it or the giving by the Owner of any extension of the time for the performance of the contract or any other forbearance on the part of either the Owner or the Principal to the other, shall not in any way release the Principal and the Surety, or either or any of them, their heirs, executors, administrators and successors, from their liability hereunder, notice to the Surety of any such extension, modifications or forbearance being hereby waived.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above bounden parties have executed the within instrument this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_.

**AS APPLICABLE:**

**AN INDIVIDUAL**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

**A PARTNERSHIP**

Name of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_

**CORPORATION**

Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of President: \_\_\_\_\_

**SURETY**

Surety Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Attorney-in-Fact: \_\_\_\_\_

Address of Attorney-in-Fact: \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number of Attorney-in-Fact: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature Attorney-in-Fact: \_\_\_\_\_

**NOTE:** Surety shall attach Power of Attorney



STATE OF MISSOURI  
 OFFICE OF ADMINISTRATION  
 DIVISION OF FACILITIES MANAGEMENT, DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
**PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION REQUEST**

PROJECT NUMBER

PROJECT TITLE AND LOCATION

CHECK APPROPRIATE BOX

**SUBSTITUTION PRIOR TO BID OPENING**  
 (Minimum of (5) working days prior to receipt of Bids as per Article 4 – Instructions to Bidders)

**SUBSTITUTION FOLLOWING AWARD**  
 (Maximum of (20) working days from Notice to Proceed as per Article 3 – General Conditions)

FROM: BIDDER/CONTRACTOR (PRINT COMPANY NAME)

TO: ARCHITECT/ENGINEER (PRINT COMPANY NAME)

Bidder/Contractor hereby requests acceptance of the following product or systems as a substitution in accordance with provisions of Division One of the Bidding Documents:

SPECIFIED PRODUCT OR SYSTEM

SPECIFICATION SECTION NO.

SUPPORTING DATA

Product data for proposed substitution is attached (include description of product, standards, performance, and test data)

Sample                       Sample will be sent, if requested

**QUALITY COMPARISON**

	SPECIFIED PRODUCT	SUBSTITUTION REQUEST
NAME, BRAND		
CATALOG NO.		
MANUFACTURER		
VENDOR		

**PREVIOUS INSTALLATIONS**

PROJECT	ARCHITECT/ENGINEER	DATE INSTALLED
LOCATION		

**SIGNIFICANT VARIATIONS FROM SPECIFIED PRODUCT**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



**REASON FOR SUBSTITUTION**

---

---

---

---

---

---

**DOES PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION AFFECT OTHER PARTS OF WORK?**

YES     NO

IF YES, EXPLAIN

---

---

---

---

---

---

**SUBSTITUTION REQUIRES DIMENSIONAL REVISION OR REDESIGN OF STRUCTURE OR A/E WORK**

YES     NO

**BIDDER'S/CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF CONFORMANCE OF PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION TO CONTRACT REQUIREMENT:**

We have investigated the proposed substitution. We believe that it is equal or superior in all respects to specified product, except as stated above; that it will provide the same Warranty as specified product; that we have included complete implications of the substitution; that we will pay redesign and other costs caused by the substitution which subsequently become apparent; and that we will pay costs to modify other parts of the Work as may be needed, to make all parts of the Work complete and functioning as a result of the substitution.

BIDDER/CONTRACTOR

DATE

**REVIEW AND ACTION**

Resubmit Substitution Request with the following additional information:

---

Substitution is accepted.

Substitution is accepted with the following comments:

---

Substitution is not accepted.

ARCHITECT/ENGINEER

DATE



PROJECT NUMBER
----------------

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENT THAT:                    hereinafter called "Subcontractor" who heretofore entered into an agreement with                    hereinafter called "Contractor", for the performance of work and/or furnishing of material for the construction of the project entitled

(PROJECT TITLE, PROJECT LOCATION, AND PROJECT NUMBER)

at  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 (ADDRESS OF PROJECT)

for the State of Missouri (Owner) which said subcontract is by this reference incorporated herein, in consideration of such final payment by Contractor.

DOES HEREBY:

1. ACKNOWLEDGE that they have been **PAID IN FULL** all sums due for work and materials contracted or done by their Subcontractors, Material Vendors, Equipment and Fixture Suppliers, Agents and Employees, or otherwise in the performance of the Work called for by the aforesaid Contract and all modifications or extras or additions thereto, for the construction of said project or otherwise.
2. RELEASE and fully, finally, and forever discharge the Owner from any and all suits, actions, claims, and demands for payment for work performed or materials supplied by Subcontractor in accordance with the requirements of the above referenced Contract.
1. REPRESENT that all of their Employees, Subcontractors, Material Vendors, Equipment and Fixture Suppliers, and everyone else has been **paid in full** all sums due them, or any of them, in connection with performance of said Work, or anything done or omitted by them, or any of them in connection with the construction of said improvements, or otherwise.

DATED this            day of            , 20    .

NAME OF SUBCONTRACTOR

BY (TYPED OR PRINTED NAME)

SIGNATURE

TITLE

ORIGINAL: FILE/Closeout Documents



STATE OF MISSOURI  
 OFFICE OF ADMINISTRATION  
 DIVISION OF FACILITIES MANAGEMENT,  
 DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

**MBE/WBE/SDVE PROGRESS REPORT**

Remit with **ALL** Progress and Final Payments

(Please check appropriate box) CONSULTANT CONSTRUCTION

PAY APP NO.	PROJECT NUMBER
CHECK IF FINAL <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>FINAL</b>	DATE

PROJECT TITLE

PROJECT LOCATION

FIRM

ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM (Same as Line Item 1. on Form A of Application for Payment)  
 \$

TOTAL CONTRACT SUM TO DATE (Same as Line Item 3. on Form A of Application for Payment)  
 \$

THE TOTAL MBE/WBE/SDVE PARTICIPATION DOLLAR AMOUNT OF THIS PROJECT AS INDICATED IN THE ORIGINAL CONTRACT: \$

SELECT MBE, WBE, SDVE	TOTAL AMOUNT OF SUBCONTRACT	\$ AMOUNT PAID-TO-DATE (include approved contract changes)	CONSULTANT/SUBCONSULTANT OR CONTRACTOR/SUBCONTRACTOR/SUPPLIER COMPANY NAME
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	
<input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> WBE <input type="checkbox"/> SDVE	\$	\$	

## **INSTRUCTIONS FOR MBE/WBE/SDVE PROGRESS REPORT**

### **CONTRACTOR OR CONSULTANT TO FILL OUT AND REMIT WITH EACH PAY APPLICATION:**

The MBE/WBE/SDVE Progress Report for the project is issued with the contract comprising values reported in the consultant's Proposal or on the successful contractor's Section 004337 Compliance Evaluation Forms.

At Initial Pay Application fill in the following:

1. Pay App No. Start with 1.
2. Fill in the Project Number and Date.
3. Enter Project Title, Project Location, and Firm.
4. Fill in the "Original Contract Sum" and "Total Contract Sum To Date" (Reference applicable Line Items on Form A of Application for Payment).
5. Indicate the Total Participation Dollar Amount from the Original Contract.
6. Select MBE, WBE, or SDVE for each Consultant/Subconsultant or Contractor/Subcontractor/Supplier.
7. Enter the "Total Amount of Subcontract", "\$ Amount (Paid-To-Date)", and Company Name.

For all subsequent Pay Applications fill in the following:

1. Pay App No.
2. If Final Pay App, check box.
3. Fill in the Project Number and Date.
4. Enter Project Title, Project Location, and Firm
5. At each Pay App fill in the "Original Contract Sum" and "Total Contract Sum To Date" (reference applicable Line Items on Form A of Application for Payment).
6. Indicate the Total Participation Dollar Amount from the Original Contract.
7. Select MBE, WBE, or SDVE for each Consultant/Subconsultant or Contractor/Subcontractor/Supplier
8. Enter the "Total Amount of Subcontract", "\$ Amount (Paid-To-Date)", and Company Name.



STATE OF MISSOURI  
 OFFICE OF ADMINISTRATION  
 DIVISION OF FACILITIES MANAGEMENT, DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
**AFFIDAVIT – COMPLIANCE WITH PREVAILING WAGE LAW**

PROJECT NUMBER
----------------

Before me, the undersigned Notary Public, in and for the County of \_\_\_\_\_  
 State of \_\_\_\_\_ personally came and appeared \_\_\_\_\_  
 (NAME)  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 of the \_\_\_\_\_  
 (POSITION) (NAME OF THE COMPANY)  
 (a corporation) (a partnership) (a proprietorship) and after being duly sworn did depose and say that all provisions and requirements set out in Chapter 290, Sections 290.210 through and including 290.340, Missouri Revised Statutes, pertaining to the payment of wages to workmen employed on public works project have been fully satisfied and there has been no exception to the full and completed compliance with said provisions and requirements and with Wage Determination No: \_\_\_\_\_ issued by the Department of Labor and Industrial Relations, State of Missouri on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20 \_\_\_\_ in carrying out the contract and working in connection with \_\_\_\_\_  
 (NAME OF PROJECT)  
 Located at \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ County  
 (NAME OF THE INSTITUTION)  
 Missouri, and completed on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20 \_\_\_\_

SIGNATURE

**NOTARY INFORMATION**

NOTARY PUBLIC EMBOSSEY OR BLACK INK RUBBER STAMP SEAL	STATE	COUNTY (OR CITY OF ST. LOUIS)
	SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN BEFORE ME, THIS	
	DAY OF	YEAR
	NOTARY PUBLIC SIGNATURE	MY COMMISSION EXPIRES
NOTARY PUBLIC NAME (TYPED OR PRINTED)		<b>USE RUBBER STAMP IN CLEAR AREA BELOW</b>

FILE: Closeout Documents

# GENERAL CONDITIONS

## INDEX

### ARTICLE:

#### 1. General Provisions

- 1.1. Definitions
- 1.2. Drawings and Specifications
- 1.3. Compliance with Laws, Permits, Regulations and Inspections
- 1.4. Nondiscrimination in Employment
- 1.5. Anti-Kickback
- 1.6. Patents and Royalties
- 1.7. Preference for American and Missouri Products and Services
- 1.8. Communications
- 1.9. Separate Contracts and Cooperation
- 1.10. Assignment of Contract
- 1.11. Indemnification
- 1.12. Disputes and Disagreements

#### 2. Owner/Designer Responsibilities

#### 3. Contractor Responsibilities

- 3.1. Acceptable Substitutions
- 3.2. Submittals
- 3.3. As-Built Drawings
- 3.4. Guaranty and Warranties
- 3.5. Operation and Maintenance Manuals
- 3.6. Other Contractor Responsibilities
- 3.7. Subcontracts

#### 4. Changes in the Work

- 4.1. Changes in the Work
- 4.2. Changes in Completion Time

#### 5. Construction and Completion

- 5.1. Construction Commencement
- 5.2. Project Construction
- 5.3. Project Completion
- 5.4. Payments

#### 6. Bond and Insurance

#### 6.1. Bond

#### 6.2. Insurance

#### 7. Termination or Suspension of Contract

#### 7.1. For Site Conditions

#### 7.2. For Cause

#### 7.3. For Convenience

## SECTION 007213 - GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. These General Conditions apply to each section of these specifications. The Contractor is subject to the provisions contained herein.
- B. The General Conditions are intended to define the relationship of the Owner, the Designer and the Contractor thereby establishing certain rules and provisions governing the operation and performance of the work so that the work may be performed in a safe, orderly, expeditious and workmanlike manner.

## ARTICLE 1 – GENERAL PROVISIONS

### ARTICLE 1.1 - DEFINITIONS

As used in these contract documents, the following terms shall have the meanings and refer to the parties designated in these definitions.

- 1. **"COMMISSIONER"**: The Commissioner of the Office of Administration.
- 2. **"CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS"**: The "Construction Documents" shall consist of the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda.
- 3. **"CONSTRUCTION REPRESENTATIVE:"** Whenever the term "Construction Representative" is used, it shall mean the Owner's Representative at the work site.
- 4. **"CONTRACTOR"**: Party or parties who have entered into a contract with the Owner to furnish work under these specifications and drawings.
- 5. **"DESIGNER"**: When the term "Designer" is used herein, it shall refer to the Architect, Engineer, or Consultant of Record specified and defined in Paragraph 2.0 of the Supplemental Conditions, or his duly authorized representative. The Designer may be either a consultant or state employee.
- 6. **"DIRECTOR"**: Whenever the term "Director" is used, it shall mean the Director of the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction or his Designee, representing the Office of Administration, State of Missouri. The Director is the agent of the Owner.
- 7. **"DIVISION"**: Shall mean the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction, State of Missouri.

- 8. **"INCIDENTAL JOB BURDENS"**: Shall mean those expenses relating to the cost of work, incurred either in the home office or on the job-site, which are necessary in the course of doing business but are incidental to the job. Such costs include office supplies and equipment, postage, courier services, telephone expenses including long distance, water and ice and other similar expenses.
- 9. **"JOINT VENTURE"**: An association of two (2) or more businesses to carry out a single business enterprise for profit for which purpose they combine their property, capital, efforts, skills and knowledge.
- 10. **"OWNER"**: Whenever the term "Owner" is used, it shall mean the State of Missouri.
- 11. **"PROJECT"**: Wherever the term "Project" is used, it shall mean the work required to be completed by the construction contract.
- 12. **"PROJECT MANUAL"**: The "Project Manual" shall consist of Introductory Information, Invitation for Bid, Instructions to Bidders, Bid Documents, Additional Information, Standard Forms, General Conditions, Supplemental General Conditions, General Requirements and Technical Specifications.
- 13. **"SUBCONTRACTOR"**: Party or parties who contract under, or for the performance of part or this entire Contract between the Owner and Contractor. The subcontract may or may not be direct with the Contractor.
- 14. **"WORK"**: Labor, material, supplies, plant and equipment required to perform and complete the service agreed to by the Contractor in a safe, expeditious, orderly and workmanlike manner so that the project shall be complete and finished in the best manner known to each respective trade.
- 15. **"WORKING DAYS"**: are all calendar days except Saturdays, Sundays and the following holidays: New Year's Day, Martin Luther King, Jr. Day, Lincoln Day, Washington's Birthday (observed), Truman Day, Memorial Day, Juneteenth, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans Day (observed), Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day.

### ARTICLE 1.2 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. In case of discrepancy between drawings and specifications, specifications shall govern. Should discrepancies in architectural drawings, structural drawings and mechanical drawings occur,

architectural drawings shall govern and, in case of conflict between structural and mechanical drawings, structural drawings shall govern.

- B. Specifications are separated into titled divisions for convenience of reference only and to facilitate letting of contracts and subcontracts. The Contractor is responsible for establishing the scope of work for subcontractors, which may cross titled divisions. Neither the Owner nor Designer will establish limits and jurisdiction of subcontracts.
- C. Figured dimensions take precedence over scaled measurements and details over smaller scale general drawings. In the event of conflict between any of the documents contained within the contract, the documents shall take precedence and be controlling in the following sequence: addenda, supplementary general conditions, general conditions, division 1 specifications, technical division specifications, drawings, bid form and instructions to bidders.
- D. Anything shown on drawings and not mentioned in these specifications or vice versa, as well as any incidental work which is obviously necessary to complete the project within the limits established by the drawings and specifications, although not shown on or described therein, shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost as a part of his contract.
- E. Upon encountering conditions differing materially from those indicated in the contract documents, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Designer and Construction Representative in writing before such conditions are disturbed. The Designer shall promptly investigate said conditions and report to the Owner, with a recommended course of action. If conditions do materially differ and cause an increase or decrease in contract cost or time required for completion of any portion of the work, a contract change will be initiated as outlined in Article 4 of these General Conditions.
- E. Only work included in the contract documents is authorized, and the Contractor shall do no work other than that described therein or in accordance with appropriately authorized and approved contract changes.

#### **ARTICLE 1.3 - COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, PERMITS, REGULATIONS AND INSPECTIONS**

- A. Since the Owner is the State of Missouri, municipal or political subdivisions, zoning ordinances, construction codes (other than licensing of trades), and other like ordinances are not applicable to construction on Owner's property, and Contractor will not be required to submit drawings and specifications to any municipal or political subdivision, authority, obtain

construction permits or any other licenses (other than licensing of trades) or permits from or submit to inspections by any municipality or political subdivision relating to the construction for this project. All permits or licenses required by municipality or political subdivision for operation on property not belonging to Owner shall be obtained by and paid for by Contractor. Each Contractor shall comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules and regulations that pertain to the work of this contract.

- B. Contractors, subcontractors and their employees engaged in the businesses of electrical, mechanical, plumbing, carpentry, sprinkler system work, and other construction related trades shall be licensed to perform such work by the municipal or political subdivision where the project is located, if such licensure is required by local code. Local codes shall dictate the level (master, journeyman, and apprentice) and the number, type and ratio of licensed tradesmen required for this project within the jurisdiction of such municipal or political subdivision.
- C. Equipment and controls manufacturers and their authorized service and installation technicians that do not maintain an office within the jurisdiction of the municipal or political subdivision but are a listed or specified contractor or subcontractor on this project are exempt from Paragraph 1.3 B above.
- D. The Contractor shall post a copy of the wage determination issued for the project and included as a part of the contract documents, in a prominent and easily accessible location at the site of construction for the duration of the project.
- E. Any contractor or subcontractor to such contractor at any tier signing a contract to work on this project shall provide a ten-hour Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) construction safety program for their on-site employees which includes a course in construction safety and health approved by OSHA or a similar program approved by the Department of Labor and Industrial Relations which is at least as stringent as an approved OSHA program. The contractor shall forfeit as a penalty to the public body on whose behalf the contract is made or awarded, two thousand five hundred dollars plus one hundred dollars for each employee employed by the contractor or subcontractor, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such employee is employed without the required training.

#### **ARTICLE 1.4 - NONDISCRIMINATION IN EMPLOYMENT**

- A. The Contractor and his subcontractors will not discriminate against individuals based on race,



color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, or age, but may use restrictions which relate to bona fide occupational qualifications. Specifically, the Contractor and his subcontractors shall not discriminate:

1. Against recipients of service on the basis of race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability or age.
2. Against any employee or applicant, for employment on the basis of race, color, religion, national origin, sex or otherwise qualified disability status.
3. Against any applicant for employment or employee on the basis of age, where such applicant or employee is between ages 40 and 70 and where such Contractor employs at least 20 persons.
4. Against any applicant for employment or employee on the basis of that person's status as a disabled or Vietnam-era veteran.

The Contractor and his Subcontractors will take affirmative action to insure applicants for employment and employees are treated equally without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion and transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor and his Subcontractors will give written notice of their commitments under this clause to any labor union with which they have bargaining or other agreements.

- B. The Contractor and his subcontractors shall develop, implement, maintain and submit in writing to the Owner an affirmative action program if at least fifty (50) persons in the aggregate are employed under this contract. If less than fifty (50) persons in the aggregate are to be employed under this contract, the Contractor shall submit, in lieu of the written affirmative action program, a properly executed Affidavit for Affirmative Action in the form included in the contract specifications. For the purpose of this section, an "affirmative action program" means positive action to influence all employment practices (including, but not limited to, recruiting, hiring, promoting and training) in providing equal employment opportunity regardless of race, color, sex, national origin, religion, age (where the person affected is between age 40 and 70), disabled and Vietnam-era veteran status, and disability. Such "affirmative action program" shall include:

1. A written policy statement committing the total organization to affirmative action and

assigning management responsibilities and procedures for evaluation and dissemination;

2. The identification of a person designated to handle affirmative action;
3. The establishment of non-discriminatory selection standards, objective measures to analyze recruitment, an upward mobility system, a wage and salary structure, and standards applicable to lay-off, recall, discharge, demotion and discipline;
4. The exclusion of discrimination from all collective bargaining agreements; and
5. Performance of an internal audit of the reporting system to monitor execution and to provide for future planning.

In the enforcement of this non-discrimination clause, the Owner may use any reasonable procedures available, including, but not limited to: requests, reports, site visits and inspection of relevant documents of contractors and subcontractors.

- C. In the event of the Contractor's or his subcontractor's noncompliance with any provisions of this Article of the Contract, the Owner may cancel this contract in whole or in part or require the Contractor to terminate his contract with the subcontractor.

#### **ARTICLE 1.5 - ANTI-KICKBACK**

No employee of the division, shall have or acquire any pecuniary interest, whether direct or indirect, in this contract or in any part hereof. No officer, employee, designer, attorney, or administrator of or for the Owner who is authorized in such capacity and on behalf of the Owner to exercise any legislative, executive, supervisory or other similar functions in connection with the construction of the project, shall have or acquire any pecuniary interest, whether direct or indirect, in this contract, any material supply contract, subcontract, insurance contract, or any other contract pertaining to the project.

#### **ARTICLE 1.6 - PATENTS AND ROYALTIES**

- A. The Contractor shall hold and save the Owner and its officers, agents, servants and employees harmless from liabilities of any nature or kind, including cost and expenses, for, or on account of, any patented or unpatented invention, process, article or appliance manufactured or used in the performance of this contract, including its use by the Owner, unless otherwise specifically stipulated in the contract documents.
- B. If the Contractor uses any design, device or materials covered by letters, patent or copyright,

the Contractor shall provide for such use by suitable agreement with the Owner of such patented or copyrighted design, device or material. It is mutually agreed and understood, without exception, that the contract prices shall include all royalties or costs arising from the use of such design, device or materials, in any way involved in the work. The Contractor and/or his sureties shall indemnify and save harmless the Owner of the project from any and all claims for infringement by reason of the use of such patented or copyrighted design, device or materials or any trademark or copyright in connection with work agreed to be performed under this contract and shall indemnify the Owner for any cost, expense or damage it may be obliged to pay by reason of such infringement at any time during the prosecution of the work or after completion of the work.

#### **ARTICLE 1.7 - PREFERENCE FOR AMERICAN AND MISSOURI PRODUCTS AND SERVICES**

- A. By virtue of statutory authority a preference will be given to Missouri labor and to products of mines, forests and quarries of the state of Missouri when they are found in marketable quantities in the state, and all such materials shall be of the best quality and suitable character that can be obtained at reasonable market prices, all as provided for in Section 8.280, Missouri Revised Statutes and Cumulative Supplements.
- B. Furthermore, pursuant to Section 34.076 Missouri Revised Statutes and Cumulative Supplements, a preference shall be given to those persons doing business as Missouri firms, corporations, or individuals, or which maintain Missouri offices or places of business, when the quality of performance promised is equal or better and the price quoted is the same or less. In addition, in order for a non-domiciliary bidder to be successful, his bid must be that same percentage lower than a domiciliary Missouri bidder's bid, as would be required for a Missouri bidder to successfully bid in the non-domiciliary state.
- C. In accordance with the Missouri Domestic Products Procurement Act Section 34.350 RSMo and Cumulative Supplements any manufactured goods or commodities used or supplied in the performance of this contract or any subcontract thereto shall be manufactured, assembled or produced in the United States, unless the specified products are not manufactured, assembled or produced in the United States in sufficient quantities to meet the agency's requirements or cannot be manufactured, assembled or produced in the United States within the necessary time in sufficient quantities to meet the contract requirements, or if obtaining the specified products manufactured, assembled or produced in the

United States would increase the cost of this contract for purchase of the product by more than ten percent.

#### **ARTICLE 1.8 - COMMUNICATIONS**

- A. All notices, requests, instructions, approvals and claims must be in writing and shall be delivered to the Designer and copied to the Construction Representative for the project except as required by Article 1.12 Disputes and Disagreements, or as otherwise specified by the Owner in writing as stated in Section 012600. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given as of the time of actual receipt.
- B. The Contractor shall attend on-site progress and coordination meetings, as scheduled by the Construction Representative, no less than once a month.
- C. The Contractor shall ensure that major subcontractors and suppliers shall attend monthly progress meetings as necessary to coordinate the work, and as specifically requested by the Construction Representative.

#### **ARTICLE 1.9 - SEPARATE CONTRACTS AND COOPERATION**

- A. The Owner reserves the right to let other contracts in connection with this work. The Contractor shall afford other contractors reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of their materials and the execution of their work and shall properly connect and coordinate his work with theirs.
- B. The Contractor shall consult the drawings for all other contractors in connection with this work. Any work conflicting with the above shall be brought to the attention of the Owner's Representative before the work is performed. If the Contractor fails to do this, and constructs any work which interferes with the work of another contractor, the Contractor shall remove any part so conflicting and rebuild same, as directed by the Owner's Representative at no additional cost to the Owner.
- C. Each contractor shall be required to coordinate his work with other contractors so as to afford others reasonable opportunity for execution of their work. No contractor shall delay any other contractor by neglecting to perform contract work at the proper time. If any contractor causes delay to another, they shall be liable directly to that contractor for such delay in addition to any liquidated damages which might be due the Owner.
- D. Should the Contractor or project associated subcontractors refuse to cooperate with the instructions and reasonable requests of other Contractors or other subcontractors in the overall

coordinating of the work, the Owner may take such appropriate action and issue directions, as required, to avoid unnecessary and unwarranted delays.

- E. Each Contractor shall be responsible for damage done to Owner's or other Contractor's property by him/her or workers in his employ through their fault or negligence.
- F. Should a Contractor sustain any damage through any act or omission of any other Contractor having a contract with the Owner, the Contractor so damaged shall have no claim or cause of action against the Owner for such damage, but shall have a claim or cause of action against the other Contractor to recover any and all damages sustained by reason of the acts or omissions of such Contractor. The phrase "acts or omissions" as used in this section shall be defined to include, but not be limited to, any unreasonable delay on the part of any such contractors.

#### **ARTICLE 1.10 - ASSIGNMENT OF CONTRACT**

- A. No assignment by Contractor of any amount or any part of this contract or of the funds to be received there under will be recognized unless such assignment has had the written approval of the Director and the surety has been given due notice of such assignment and has furnished written consent thereto. In addition to the usual recitals in assignment contracts, the following language must be set forth: "It is agreed that the funds to be paid to the assignee under this assignment are subject to performance by the Contractor of this contract and to claims or liens for services rendered or materials supplied for the performance of the work called for in said contract in favor of all persons, firms or corporations rendering such services or supplying such materials."

#### **ARTICLE 1.11 - INDEMNIFICATION**

- A. Contractor agrees to indemnify and save harmless Owner and its respective commissioners, officers, officials, agents, consultants and employees and Designer, their agents, servants and employees, from and against any and all liability for damage arising from injuries to persons or damage to property occasioned by any acts or omissions of Contractor, any subcontractors, agents, servants or employees, including any and all expense, legal or otherwise, which may be incurred by Owner or Designer, its agents, servants or employees, in defense of any claim, action or suit.
- B. The obligations of the Contractor under this paragraph shall not extend to the liability of the Designer, his agents or employees, arising out of (1) the preparation or approval of maps, drawings, opinions, reports, surveys, contract changes, design or specifications, or (2) giving of or the failure to

give directions or instructions by the Designer, his agents or employees as required by this contract documents provided such giving or failure to give is the primary cause of the injury or damage.

#### **ARTICLE 1.12 - DISPUTES AND DISAGREEMENTS**

It is hereby expressly agreed and understood that in case any controversy or difference of opinion arises during construction, best efforts will be given to resolution at the field level. Should those efforts be unsuccessful, the Contractor has the right to appeal in writing, the decision of the Director's Designee to the Director at Room 730 Truman Building, P.O. Box 809, Jefferson City, Missouri 65102. The decision of the Director shall be final and binding on all parties.

#### **ARTICLE 2 -- OWNER/DESIGNER RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. The Owner shall give all orders and directions contemplated under this contract relative to the execution of the work. During progress of work the Owner will be represented at the project site by the Construction Representative and/or Designer, whose responsibilities are to see that this contract is properly fulfilled.
- B. The Owner shall at all times have access to the work whenever it is in preparation or progress. The Contractors shall provide proper facilities for such access and for inspection and supervision.
- C. All materials and workmanship used in the work shall be subject to the inspection of the Designer and Construction Representative, and any work which is deemed defective shall be removed, rebuilt or made good immediately upon notice. The cost of such correction shall be borne by the Contractor. Contractor shall not be entitled to an extension of the contract completion date in order to remedy defective work. All rejected materials shall be immediately removed from the site of the work.
- D. If the Contractor fails to proceed at once with the correction of rejected defective materials or workmanship, the Owner may, by separate contract or otherwise, have the defects remedied or rejected. Materials removed from the site and charge the cost of the same against any monies which may be due the Contractor, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner.
- E. Failure or neglect on the part of Owner to observe faulty work, or work done which is not in accordance with the drawings and specifications shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility

for correcting such work without additional compensation.

- F. The Owner shall have the right to direct the Contractor to uncover any completed work.
  - 1. If the Contractor fails to adequately notify the Construction Representative and/or Designer of an inspection as required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, upon written request, uncover the work. The Contractor shall bear all costs associated with uncovering and again covering the work exposed.
  - 2. If the Contractor is directed to uncover work, which was not otherwise required by the Contract Documents to be inspected, and the work is found to be defective in any respect, no compensation shall be allowed for this work. If, however, such work is found to meet the requirements of this contract, the actual cost of labor and material necessarily involved in the examination and replacement plus 10% shall be allowed the Contractor.
- G. The Designer shall give all orders and directions contemplated under this contract relative to the scope of the work and shall give the initial interpretation of the contract documents.
- H. The Owner may file a written notice to the Contractor to dismiss immediately any subcontractors, project managers, superintendents, foremen, workers, watchmen or other employees whom the Owner may deem incompetent, careless or a hindrance to proper or timely execution of the work. The Contractor shall comply with such notice as promptly as practicable without detriment to the work or its progress.
- I. If in the Owner's judgment it becomes necessary at any time to accelerate work, when ordered by the Owner in writing, the Contractor shall redirect resources to such work items and execute such portions of the work as may be required to complete the work within the current approved contract schedule.

### **ARTICLE 3 -- CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

The Contractor shall register and utilize the Owner's eBuilder digital project management system for submission of documents described in the following sections. This includes but is not limited to submittals as required by designer, payment applications, Request for Information (RFI), construction change orders, Request for Proposals (RFP), Designer Supplemental Instructions (DSI), etc.

### **ARTICLE 3.1 -- ACCEPTABLE SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. The Contractor may request use of any article, device, product, material, fixture, form or type of construction which in the judgment of the Owner and Designer is equal in all respects to that named. Standard products of manufacturers other than those specified will be accepted when, prior to the ordering or use thereof, it is proven to the satisfaction of the Owner and Designer that they are equal in design, strength, durability, usefulness and convenience for the purpose intended.
- B. Any changes required in the details and dimensions indicated on the drawings for the substitution of products other than those specified shall be properly made at the expense of the Contractor requesting the substitution or change.
- C. The Contractor shall submit a request for such substitutions in writing to the Owner and Designer within twenty (20) working days after the date of the "Notice to Proceed." Thereafter no consideration will be given to alternate forms of accomplishing the work. This Article does not preclude the Owner from exercising the provisions of Article 4 hereof.
- D. Any request for substitution by the Contractor shall be submitted in accordance with SECTION 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS.
- E. When a material has been approved, no change in brand or make will be permitted unless:
  - 1. Written verification is received from the manufacturer stating they cannot make delivery on the date previously agreed, or
  - 2. Material delivered fails to comply with contract requirements.

### **ARTICLE 3.2 -- SUBMITTALS**

- A. The Contractor's submittals must be submitted with such promptness as to allow for review and approval so as not to cause delay in the work. The Contractor shall coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, = purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

Submit four (4) copies to the Designer and additional copies as required for the subcontractors and material suppliers. Also provide copies to meet the requirements for maintenance manuals.

- B. All subcontractors' shop drawings and schedules shall be submitted by the Contractor and shall bear evidence that Contractor has received, reviewed, and approved them. Any shop drawings and

schedules submitted without this evidence will be returned to the Contractor for resubmission.

- C. The Contractor shall include with the shop drawing, a letter indicating any and all deviations from the drawings and/or specifications. Failure to notify the Designer of such deviations will be grounds for subsequent rejection of the related work or materials. If, in the opinion of the Designer, the deviations are not acceptable, the Contractor will be required to furnish the item as specified and indicated on the drawings.
- D. The Designer shall check shop drawings and schedules with reasonable promptness and approve them only if they conform to the design concept of the project and comply with the information given in the contract documents. The approval shall not relieve the Contractor from the responsibility to comply with the drawings and specifications, unless the Contractor has called the Designer's attention to the deviation, in writing, at the time of submission and the Designer has knowingly approved thereof. An approval of any such modification will be given only under the following conditions:
  - 1. It is in the best interest of the Owner
  - 2. It does not increase the contract sum and/or completion time
  - 3. It does not deviate from the design intent
  - 4. It is without prejudice to any and all rights under the surety bond.
- E. No extension of time will be granted because of the Contractor's failure to submit shop drawings and schedules in ample time to allow for review, possible resubmission, and approval. Fabrication of work shall not commence until the Contractor has received approval. The Contractor shall furnish prints of approved shop drawings and schedules to all subcontractors whose work is in any way related to the work under this contract. Only prints bearing this approval will be allowed on the site of construction
- F. The Contractor shall maintain a complete file on-site of approved shop drawings available for use by the Construction Representative.

### **ARTICLE 3.3 – AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**

- A. The Contractor shall update a complete set of the construction drawings, shop drawings and schedules of all work monthly by marking changes, and at the completion of their work (prior to submission of request for final payment) note all changes and turn the set over to the Construction Representative. The updates shall show all addenda, all field changes that were made to adapt to field conditions, changes resulting from contract

changes or supplemental instructions, and all locations of structures, buried installations of piping, conduit, and utility services. All buried and concealed items both inside and outside shall be accurately located as to depth and referenced to permanent features such as interior or exterior wall faces and dimensions shall be given in a neat and legible manner in a contrasting colored pencil or ink. If approved by the Designer, an electronic file format may be provided.

### **ARTICLE 3.4 – GUARANTY AND WARRANTIES**

#### **A. General Guaranty**

- 1. Neither the final certificate of payment nor any provision in the contract documents nor partial use or occupancy of the premises by the Owner shall constitute an acceptance of work not done in accordance with contract requirements.
- 2. The Contractor or surety shall remedy any defects in the work and pay for any damage to property resulting there from which shall appear within a period of one (1) year from the date of substantial completion unless a longer period is otherwise specified or a differing guaranty period has been established in the substantial completion certificate. The Owner will give notice of observed defects with reasonable promptness.
- 3. In case of default on the part of the Contractor in fulfilling this part of this contract, the Owner may correct the work or repair the damage and the cost and expense incurred in such event shall be paid by or recoverable from the Contractor or surety.
- 4. The work will be free from defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted, and that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Work not conforming to these requirements, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, may be considered defective. The Contractor's guaranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, modifications not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear under normal usage. If required by the Owner, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment

#### **B. Extended Warranty**

Manufacturer's certificates of warranty shall be obtained for all major equipment. Warranty shall be obtained for at least one year. Where a longer

period is offered at no additional cost or called for in the specific equipment specifications, the longer period shall govern.

### **ARTICLE 3.5 -- OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

A. Immediately after equipment submittals are approved and no later than ten (10) working days prior to the substantial completion inspection, the Contractor shall provide to the Designer three (3) copies of operating instructions and service manuals, containing the following:

1. Start-up and Shut-down Procedures: Provide a step-by-step write up of all major equipment. When manufacturer's printed start-up, trouble shooting and shut-down procedures are available; they may be incorporated into the operating manual for reference.
2. Operating Instructions: Written operating instructions shall be included for the efficient and safe operation of all equipment.
3. Equipment List: List of all major equipment as installed shall be prepared to include model number, capacities, flow rate, name place data, shop drawings and air and water balance reports.
4. Service Instructions: Provide the following information for all pieces of equipment.
  - a. Recommended spare parts including catalog number and name of local supplier or factory representative.
  - b. Belt sizes, types, and lengths.
  - c. Wiring diagrams.
5. Manufacturer's Certificate of Warranty as described in Article 3.4.
6. Prior to the final payment, furnish to the Designer three (4) copies of parts catalogs for each piece of equipment furnished by him/her on the project with the components identified by number for replacement ordering.

B. Submission of operating instructions shall be done in the following manner.

1. Manuals shall be in quadruplicate, and all materials shall be bound into volumes of standard 8½" x 11" hard binders. Large drawings too bulky to be folded into 8½" x 11" shall be separately bound or folded and in envelopes, cross referenced and indexed with the manuals.
2. The manuals shall identify project name, project number, and include the name and

address of the Contractor, subcontractors and manufacturers who were involved with the activity described in that particular manual.

3. Internally subdivide the binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized with tab titles clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
4. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each product or system description identified.

### **ARTICLE 3.6 – OTHER CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. The Contractor shall keep on site, during progress of the work, a competent superintendent satisfactory to the Construction Representative. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor and all agreements made by the superintendent shall be binding. The superintendent shall carefully study and compare all drawings, specifications and other instructions and shall promptly notify the Construction Representative and Designer, in writing, any error, inconsistency or omission which may be discovered. The superintendent shall coordinate all work on the project. Any change of the superintendent shall be approved by the Construction Representative.
- B. Contractor shall, at all times, enforce strict discipline and good order among his employees, and shall not employ on the work any unfit person or anyone not skilled in the work assigned to him/her.
- C. The Contractor shall supply sufficient labor, material, plant and equipment and pay when due any laborer, subcontractor or supplier for supplies furnished and otherwise prosecute the work with diligence to prevent work stoppage and insure completion thereof within the time specified.
- D. The Contractor and each of his subcontractors shall submit to the Construction Representative, through the Designer such schedules of quantities and costs, progress schedules, payrolls, reports, estimates, records and other data as the Owner may request concerning work performed or to be performed under this contract.
- E. The Contractor, subcontractors, and material suppliers shall upon written request, give the Owner access to all time cards, material invoices, payrolls, estimates, profit and loss statements, and all other direct or indirect costs related to this work.
- F. The Contractor shall be responsible for laying out all contract work such as layout of architectural, structural, mechanical and electrical work, which shall be coordinated with layouts of subcontractors

for general construction work. The Contractor is also responsible for unloading, uncrating and handling of all materials and equipment to be erected or placed by him/her, whether furnished by Contractor or others. No extra charges or compensation will be allowed as a result of failure to verify dimensions before ordering materials or fabricating items.

- G. The Contractor must notify the Construction Representative at least one working day before placing concrete or burying underground utilities, pipelines, etc.
- H. Contractors shall prearrange time with the Construction Representative for the interruption of any facility operation. Unless otherwise specified in these documents, all connections, alterations or relocations as well as all other portions of the work will be performed during normal working hours.
- I. The Contractor shall coordinate all work so there will not be prolonged interruptions of existing equipment operation. Any existing plumbing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning or electrical disconnections necessary for the project, which affect portions of this construction or building or any other building must be scheduled with the Construction Representative to minimize or avoid any disruption of facility operations. In no case, unless previously approved in writing by the Construction Representative, shall utilities be left disconnected at the end of a work day or over a weekend. Any interruption of utilities either intentionally or accidentally shall not relieve the Contractor responsible for the interruption from the responsibility to repair and restore the utility to normal service. Repairs and restoration shall be made before the workers responsible for the repair and restoration leave the job.
- J. Contractors shall limit operations and storage of materials to the area within the project, except as necessary to connect to existing utilities, and shall not encroach on neighboring property. The Contractor shall be responsible for repair of their damage to property on or off the project site occurring during construction of project. All such repairs shall be made to the satisfaction of the property owner.
- K. Unless otherwise permitted, all materials shall be new and both workmanship and materials shall be of the best quality.
- L. Unless otherwise provided and stipulated within these specifications, the Contractor shall furnish, construct, and/or install and pay for materials, devices, mechanisms, equipment, all necessary personnel, utilities including, but not limited to water, heat, light and electric power, transportation

services, applicable taxes of every nature, and all other facilities necessary for the proper execution and completion of the work.

- M. Contractor shall carefully examine the plans and drawings and shall be responsible for the proper fitting of his material, equipment and apparatus into the building.
- N. The Contractor or subcontractors shall not overload, or permit others to overload, any part of any structure during the performance of this contract.
- O. All temporary shoring, bracing, etc., required for the removal of existing work and/or for the installation of new work shall be included in this contract. The Contractor shall make good, at no cost to the Owner, any damage caused by improper support or failure of shoring in any respect. Each Contractor shall be responsible for shoring required to protect his work or adjacent property and improvements of Owner and shall be responsible for shoring or for giving written notice to adjacent property owners. Shoring shall be removed only after completion of permanent supports.
- P. The Contractor shall provide at the proper time such material as is required for support of the work. If openings are required, whether shown on drawings or not, the Contractor shall see that they are properly constructed.
- Q. During the performance of work the Contractor shall be responsible for providing and maintaining warning signs, lights, signal devices, barricades, guard rails, fences and other devices appropriately located on site which will give proper and understandable warning to all persons of danger of entry onto land, structure or equipment.
- R. The Contractor shall be responsible for protection, including weather protection, and proper maintenance of all equipment and materials.
- S. The Contractor shall be responsible for care of the finished work and shall protect same from damage or defacement until substantial completion by the Owner. If the work is damaged by any cause, the Contractor shall immediately begin to make repairs in accordance with the drawings and specifications. Contractor shall be liable for all damage or loss unless attributable to the acts or omissions of the Owner or Designer. Any claim for reimbursement shall be submitted in accordance with Article 4. After substantial completion the Contractor will only be responsible for damage resulting from acts or omissions of the Contractor or subcontractors through final warranty.
- T. In the event the Contractor encounters an unforeseen hazardous material, the Contractor

shall immediately stop work in the area affected and report the condition to the Owner and Designer in writing. The Contractor shall not be required, pursuant to Article 4, to perform, any work relating to hazardous materials.

- U. In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 4.
- V. Before commencing work, Contractors shall confer with the Construction Representative and facility representative and review any facility rules and regulations which may affect the conduct of the work.
- W. Project signs will only be erected on major projects and only as described in the specifications. If no sign is specified, none shall be erected.

#### **ARTICLE 3.7 -- SUBCONTRACTS**

- A. Subcontractor assignments as identified in the bid form shall not be changed without written approval of the Owner. The Owner will not approve changes of a listed subcontractor unless the Contractor documents, to the satisfaction of the Owner that the subcontractor cannot or will not perform the work as specified.
- B. The Contractor is fully responsible to the Owner for the acts and omissions of all subcontractors and of persons either directly or indirectly employed by them.
- C. Every subcontractor shall be bound by the applicable terms and provisions of these contract documents, but no contractual relationship shall exist between any subcontractor and the Owner unless the right of the Contractor to proceed with the work is suspended or this contract is terminated as herein provided, and the Owner in writing elects to assume the subcontract.
- D. The Contractor shall upon receipt of "Notice to Proceed" and prior to submission of the first payment request, notify the Designer and Construction Representative in writing of the names of any subcontractors to be used in addition to those identified in the bid form and all major material suppliers proposed for all parts of the work.

#### **ARTICLE 4 -- CHANGES IN THE WORK**

##### **4.1 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. The Construction Representative, without giving notice to the surety and without invalidating this contract, may order extra work or make changes by

altering, adding to or deducting from the work, this contract sum being adjusted accordingly. All such work shall be executed under the conditions of the original contract. A claim for extension of time caused by any change must be adjusted at the time of ordering such change. No future request for time will be considered.

- B. Each Contract Change shall include all costs required to perform the work including all labor, material, equipment, overheads and profit, delay, disruptions, or other miscellaneous expenses. No subsequent requests for additional compensation including claims for delay, disruption, or reduced efficiency as a result of each change will be considered. Values from the Schedule of Values will not be binding as a basis for additions to or deductions from the contract price.
- C. The amount of any adjustment in this contract price for authorized changes shall be agreed upon before such changes become effective and shall be determined, through submission of a request for proposal, as follows:
  - 1. By an acceptable fixed price proposal from the Contractor. Breakdowns shall include all takeoff sheets of each Contractor and subcontractor. Breakdown shall include a listing of each item of material with unit prices and number of hours of labor for each task. Labor costs per hour shall be included with labor burden identified, which shall be not less than the prevailing wage rate, etc. Overhead and profit shall be shown separately for each subcontractor and the Contractor.
  - 2. By a cost-plus-fixed-fee (time and material) basis with maximum price, total cost not to exceed said maximum. Breakdown shall include a listing of each item of material with unit prices and number of hours of labor for each task. Labor costs per hour shall be included with labor burden identified, which shall be not less than the prevailing wage rate, etc. Overhead and profit shall be shown separately for each subcontractor and the Contractor.
  - 3. By unit prices contained in Contractor's original bid form and incorporated in the construction contract.
- D. Overhead and Profit on Contract Changes shall be applied as follows:

- 1. The overhead and profit charge by the Contractor and all subcontractors shall be considered to include, but is not limited to: incidental job burdens, small truck (under 1 ton) expense, mileage, small hand tools,



warranty costs, company benefits and general office overhead. Project supervision including field supervision and job site office expense shall be considered a part of overhead and profit unless a compensable time extension is granted.

2. The percentages for overhead and profit charged on Contract Changes shall be negotiated, and may vary according to the nature, extent, and complexity of the work involved. However, the overhead and profit for the Contractor or subcontractor actually performing the work shall not exceed 14%. When one or more tiers of subcontractors are used, in no event shall any Contractor or subcontractor receive as overhead and profit more than 3% of the cost of the work performed by any of his subcontractors. In no case shall the total overhead and profit paid by the Owner on any Contract Changes exceed twenty percent (20%) of the cost of materials, labor and equipment (exclusive of Contractor or any Subcontractor overhead and profit) necessary to put the contract change work in place.
  3. The Contractor will be allowed to add the cost of bonding and insurance to their cost of work. This bonding and insurance cost shall not exceed 2% and shall be allowed on the total cost of the added work, including overhead and profit.
  4. On proposals covering both increases and decreases in the amount of this contract, the application of overhead and profit shall be on the net change in the cost of the work.
  5. The percentage for overhead and profit to be credited to the Owner on Contract Changes that are solely decreases in the quantity of work or materials shall be negotiated, and may vary according to the nature, extent and complexity of the work involved, but in no case shall be less than ten percent (10%). If the percentage for overhead and profit charged for work added by Contract Changes for this contract has been negotiated to less than 10%, the negotiated rate shall then apply to credits as well.
- E. No claim for an addition to this contract sum shall be valid unless authorized as aforesaid in writing by the Owner. In the event that none of the foregoing methods are agreed upon, the Owner may order the Contractor to perform work on a time and material basis. The cost of such work shall be determined by the Contractor's actual labor and material cost to perform the work plus overhead and profit as outlined herein. The

Designer and Construction Representative shall approve the Contractor's daily time and material invoices for the work involved.

- F. If the Contractor claims that any instructions involve extra cost under this contract, the Contractor shall give the Owner's Representative written notice thereof within a reasonable time after the receipt of such instructions, and in any event before proceeding to execute the work. No such claim shall be valid unless so made and authorized by the Owner, in writing.
- G. In an emergency affecting the safety of life or of the structure or of adjoining property, the Contractor, without special instruction or authorization from the Construction Representative, is hereby permitted to act at their discretion to prevent such threatened loss or injury. The Contractor shall submit a claim for compensation for such emergency work in writing to the Owner's Representative.

#### **ARTICLE 4.2 – CHANGES IN COMPLETION TIME**

- A. Extension of the number of work days stipulated in the Contract for completion of the work with compensation may be made when:
  1. The contractor documents that proposed Changes in the work, as provided in Article 4.1, extends construction activities critical to contract completion date, OR
  2. The Owner suspends all work for convenience of the Owner as provided in Article 7.3, OR
  3. An Owner caused delay extends construction activities critical to contract completion (except as provided elsewhere in these General Conditions). The Contractor is to review the work activities yet to begin and evaluate the possibility of rescheduling the work to minimize the overall project delay.
- B. Extension of the number of work days stipulated in the Contract for completion of the work without compensation may be made when:
  1. Weather-related delays occur, subject to provisions for the inclusion of a specified number of "bad weather" days when provided for in Section 012100-Allowances, OR
  2. Labor strikes or acts of God occur, OR
  3. The work of the Contractor is delayed on account of conditions which were beyond the control of the Contractor, subcontractors or suppliers, and were not the result of their fault or negligence.
- C. No time extension or compensation will be provided for delays caused by or within the control

of the Contractor, subcontractors or suppliers and for concurrent delays caused by the Owner.

- D. The Contractor shall notify the Owner promptly of any occurrence or conditions which in the Contractor's opinion results in a need for an extension of time. The notice shall be in writing and shall include all necessary supporting materials with details of any resultant costs and be submitted in time to permit full investigation and evaluation of the Contractor's claim. The Owner shall promptly acknowledge the Contractor's notice and, after recommendation from the Owner's Representative and/or Designer, shall provide a decision to the Contractor. Failure on the part of the Contractor to provide such notice and to detail the costs shall constitute a waiver by the Contractor of any claim. Requests for extensions of time shall be for working days only.

## **ARTICLE 5 - CONSTRUCTION AND COMPLETION**

### **ARTICLE 5.1 – CONSTRUCTION COMMENCEMENT**

- A. Upon receipt of the "Intent to Award" letter, the Contractor must submit the following properly executed instruments to the Owner:
1. Contract;
  2. Performance/payment bond as described in Article 6.1;
  3. Certificates of Insurance, or the actual policies themselves, showing that the Contractor has obtained the insurance coverage required by Article 6.2.
  4. Written Affirmative Action Plans as required in Article 1.4.

Above referenced items must be received by the Owner within ten (10) working days after the effective date of the contract. If not received, the Owner may treat the failure to timely submit them as a refusal by the Contractor to accept a contract for this work and may retain as liquidated damages the Contractor's bid bond, cashier's check or certified check as provided in the Instructions to Bidders. Upon receipt the Owner will issue a "Notice to Proceed" with the work to the Contractor.

- B. Within the time frame noted in Section 013200 - Schedules, following receipt of the "Notice to Proceed", the Contractor shall submit to the Owner a progress schedule and schedule of values, showing activities through the end of the contract period. Should the Contractor not receive written notification from the Owner of the disapproval of the schedule of values within fifteen (15) working

days, the Contractor may consider it approved for purpose of determining when the first monthly Application and Certification for Payment may be submitted.

- C. The Contractor may commence work upon receipt of the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction's "Notice to Proceed" letter. Contractor shall prosecute the work with faithfulness and energy, and shall complete the entire work on or before the completion time stated in the contract documents or pay to the Owner the damages resulting from the failure to timely complete the work as set out within Article 5.4.

### **ARTICLE 5.2 -- PROJECT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Each Contractor shall submit for the Owner's approval, in reproducible form, a progress schedule showing the rate of progress and the order of the work proposed to carry on various phases of the project. The schedule shall be in conformance with the requirements outlined in Section 013200 – Schedules.
- B. Contractor shall employ and supply a sufficient force of workers, material, and equipment and shall pay when due, any worker, subcontractor or supplier and otherwise prosecute the work with such diligence so as to maintain the rate of progress indicated on the progress schedule, prevent work stoppage, and insure completion of the project within the time specified.

### **ARTICLE 5.3 -- PROJECT COMPLETION**

- A. Substantial Completion. A Project is substantially complete when construction is essentially complete and work items remaining to be completed can be done without interfering with the Owner's ability to use the Project for its intended purpose.
1. Once the Contractor has reached what they believe is Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall notify the Designer and the Construction Representative of the following:
    - a. That work is essentially complete with the exception of certain listed work items. The list shall be referred to as the "Contractor's Punch."
    - b. That all Operation and Maintenance Manuals have been assembled and submitted in accordance with Article 3.5A.
    - c. That the Work is ready for inspection by the Designer and Construction Representative. The Owner shall be entitled to a minimum of ten working

days notice before the inspection shall be performed.

2. If the work is acceptable, the Owner shall issue a Certificate of Substantial Completion, which shall set forth the responsibilities of the Owner and the Contractor for utilities, security, maintenance, damage to the work and risk of loss. The Certificate shall also identify those remaining items of work to be performed by the Contractor. All such work items shall be complete within 30 working days of the date of the Certificate, unless the Certificate specifies a different time. If the Contractor shall be required to perform tests that must be delayed due to climatic conditions, it is understood that such tests and affected equipment will be identified on the Certificate and shall be accomplished by the Contractor at the earliest possible date. Performance of the tests may not be required before Substantial Completion can be issued. The date of the issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall determine whether or not the work was completed within the contract time and whether or not Liquidated Damages are due.
  3. If the work is not acceptable, and the Owner does not issue a Certificate of Substantial Completion, the Owner shall be entitled to charge the Contractor with the Designer's and Owner's costs of re-inspection, including time and travel.
- B. Partial Occupancy. Contractor agrees that the Owner shall be permitted to occupy and use any completed or partially completed portions of the Project, when such occupancy and use is in the Owner's best interest. Owner shall notify Contractor of its desire and intention to take Partial Occupancy as soon as possible but at least ten (10) working days before the Owner intends to occupy. If the Contractor believes that the portion of the work the Owner intends to occupy is not ready for occupancy, the Contractor shall notify the Owner immediately. The Designer shall inspect the work in accordance with the procedures above. If the Contractor claims increased cost of the project or delay in completion as a result of the occupancy, he shall notify the Owner immediately but in all cases before occupancy occurs.
- C. Final Completion. The Project is finally complete when the Certificate of Substantial Completion has been issued and all work items identified therein as incomplete have been completed, and when all administrative items required by the contract have been completed. Final Completion entitles the Contractor to payment of the outstanding balance of the contract amount including all change orders

and retainage. Within five (5) working days of the date of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall identify the cost to complete any outstanding items of work. The Designer shall review the Contractor's estimate and either approve it or provide an independent estimate for all such items. If the Contractor fails to complete the remaining items within the time specified in the Certificate, the Owner may terminate the contract and go to the surety for project completion in accordance with Article 7.2 or release the contract balance to the Contractor less 150% of the approved estimate to complete the outstanding items. Upon completion of the outstanding items, when a final cost has been established, any monies remaining shall be paid to the Contractor. Failure to complete items of work does not relieve the Contractor from the obligation to complete the administrative requirements of the contract, such as the provisions of Article 5.3 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ALL ITEMS OF WORK UNDER THE CONTRACT SHALL BE CONSIDERED A DEFAULT AND BE GROUNDS FOR CONTRACT TERMINATION AND DEBARMENT.

- D. Liquidated Damages. Contractor agrees that the Owner may deduct from the contract price and retain as liquidated damages, and not as penalty or forfeiture, the sum stipulated in this contract for each work day after the Contract Completion Day on which work is not Substantially Complete. Assessment of Liquidated Damages shall not relieve the Contractor or the surety of any responsibility or obligation under the Contract. In addition, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights, claims, or remedies the Owner may have including the right to Liquidated Damages, charge the Contractor for all additional expenses incurred by the Owner and/or Designer as the result of the extended contract period through Final Completion. Additional Expenses shall include but not be limited to the costs of additional inspections.
- E. Early Completion. The Contractor has the right to finish the work before the contract completion date; however, the Owner assumes no liability for any hindrances to the Contractor unless Owner caused delays result in a time extension to the contract completion date. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any claims for lost efficiencies or for delay if a Certificate of Substantial Completion is given on or before the Contract Completion Date.

#### **ARTICLE 5.4 -- PAYMENT TO CONTRACTOR**

- A. Payments on account of this contract will be made monthly in proportion to the work which has been completed. Request for payment must be submitted on the Owner's forms. No other pay request will

be processed. Supporting breakdowns must be in the same format as Owner's forms and must provide the same level of detail. The Designer will, within 5 working days from receipt of the contractor's request for payment either issue a Certificate for Payment to the Owner, for such amount as the Designer determines is properly due, or notify the Contractor in writing of reasons for withholding a Certificate. The Owner shall make payment within 30 calendar days after the "Application and Certification for Payment" has been received and certified by the Designer. The following items are to be attached to the contractor's pay request:

1. Updated construction schedule
  2. Certified payrolls consisting of name, occupation and craft, number of hours worked and actual wages paid for each individual employee, of the Contractor and all subcontractors working on the project
- B. The Owner shall retain 5 percent of the amount of each such payment application, except as allowed by Article 5.4, until final completion and acceptance of all work covered by this contract.
- C. Each payment made to Contractor shall be on account of the total amount payable to Contractor and all material and work covered by paid partial payment shall thereupon become the sole property of Owner. This provision shall not be construed as relieving Contractor from sole responsibility for care and protection of materials and work upon which payments have been made or restoration of any damaged work or as a waiver of the right of Owner to require fulfillment of all terms of this contract.
- D. Materials delivered to the work site and not incorporated in the work will be allowed in the Application and Certification for Payment on the basis of one hundred (100%) percent of value, subject to the 5% retainage providing that they are suitably stored on the site or in an approved warehouse in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Material has previously been approved through submittal and acceptance of shop drawings conforming to requirements of Article 3.2 of General Conditions.
  2. Delivery is made in accordance with the time frame on the approved schedule.
  3. Materials, equipment, etc., are properly stored and protected from damage and deterioration and remain so - if not, previously approved amounts will be deleted from subsequent pay applications.

4. The payment request is accompanied by a breakdown identifying the material equipment, etc. in sufficient detail to establish quantity and value.
- E. The Contractor shall be allowed to include in the Application and Certification for Payment, one hundred (100%) of the value, subject to retainage, of major equipment and material stored off the site if all of the following conditions are met:
1. The request for consideration of payment for materials stored off site is made at least 15 working days prior to submittal of the Application for Payment including such material. Only materials inspected will be considered for inclusion on Application for Payment requests.
  2. Materials stored in one location off site are valued in excess of \$25,000.
  3. That a Certificate of Insurance is provided indicating adequate protection from loss, theft conversion or damage for materials stored off site. This Certificate shall show the State of Missouri as an additional insured for this loss.
  4. The materials are stored in a facility approved and inspected, by the Construction Representative.
  5. Contractor shall be responsible for, Owner costs to inspect out of state facilities, and any delays in the completion of the work caused by damage to the material or for any other failure of the Contractor to have access to this material for the execution of the work.
- F. The Owner shall determine the amount, quality and acceptability of the work and materials which are to be paid for under this contract. In the event any questions shall arise between the parties, relative to this contract or specifications, determination or decision of the Owner or the Construction Representative and the Designer shall be a condition precedent to the right of the Contractor to receive any money or payment for work under this contract affected in any manner or to any extent by such question.
- G. Payments Withheld: The Owner may withhold or nullify in whole or part any certificate to such extent as may be necessary to protect the Owner from loss on account of:
1. Defective work not remedied. When a notice of noncompliance is issued on an item or items, corrective action shall be undertaken immediately. Until corrective action is completed, no monies will be paid and no additional time will be allowed for the item or

items. The cost of corrective action(s) shall be borne by the Contractor.

2. A reasonable doubt that this contract can be completed for the unpaid balance.
3. Failure of the Contractor to update as-built drawings monthly for review by the Construction Representative.
4. Failure of the Contractor to update the construction schedule.

When the Construction Representative is satisfied the Contractor has remedied above deficiencies, payment shall be released.

H. Final Payment: Upon receipt of written notice from the Contractor to the Designer and Project Representative that the work is ready for final inspection and acceptance, the Designer and Project Representative, with the Contractor, shall promptly make such inspection. If the work is acceptable and the contract fully performed, the Construction Representative shall complete a final acceptance report and the Contractor will be directed to submit a final Application and Certification for Payment. If the Owner approves the same, the entire balance shall be due and payable, with the exception of deductions as provided for under Article 5.4.

1. Where the specifications provide for the performance by the Contractor of (certain tests for the purpose of balancing and checking the air conditioning and heating equipment and the Contractor shall have furnished and installed all such equipment in accordance with the specifications, but said test cannot then be made because of climatic conditions, such test shall may be considered as required under the provisions of the specifications, Section 013300 and this contract may be substantial Full payment will not be made until the tests have been made and the equipment and system is finally accepted. If the tests are not completed when scheduled, the Owner may deduct 150% of the value of the tests from the final payment.
2. The final payment shall not become due until the Contractor delivers to the Construction Representative:
  - a) A complete file of releases, on the standard form included in the contract documents as "Final Receipt of Payment and Release Form", from subcontractors and material suppliers evidencing payment in full for services, equipment and materials, as the case may require, if the Owner approves, or a consent from

the Surety to final payment accepting liability for any unpaid amounts.

- b) An Affidavit of Compliance with Prevailing Wage Law, in the form as included in this contract specifications, properly executed by each subcontractor, and the Contractor
  - c) Certified copies of all payrolls
  - d) As-built drawings
3. If any claim remains unsatisfied after all payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all monies that the latter may be compelled to pay in discharging such a claim including all costs and a reasonable attorney's fee.
  4. Missouri statute requires prompt payment from the Owner to the Contractor within thirty calendar days and from the Contractor to his subcontractors within fifteen calendar days. Failure to make payments within the required time frame entitles the receiving party to charge interest at the rate of one and one half percent per month calculated from the expiration of the statutory time period until paid.
  5. The value of all unused unit price allowances and/or 150% of the value of the outstanding work items, and/or liquidated damages may be deducted from the final pay request without executing a Contract Change. Any unit price items which exceed the number of units in the contract may be added by Contract Change.

## ARTICLE 6 -- INSURANCE AND BONDS

### ARTICLE 6.1 -- BOND

- A. Contractor shall furnish a performance/payment bond in an amount equal to 100% of the contract price to guarantee faithful performance of the contract and 100% of the contract price to guarantee the payment of all persons performing labor on the project and furnishing materials in connection therewith under this contract as set forth in the standard form of performance and payment bond included in the contract documents. The surety on such bond shall be issued by a surety company authorized by the Missouri Department of Insurance to do business in the state of Missouri.
- B. All Performance/Payment Bonds furnished in response to this provision shall be provided by a bonding company with a rating of B+ or higher as established by A.M. Best Company, Inc. in their most recent publication.

**ARTICLE 6.2 – INSURANCE**

A. The successful Contractor shall procure and maintain for the duration of the contract issued a policy or policies of insurance for the protection of both the Contractor and the Owner and their respective officers, officials, agents, consultants and employees. The Owner requires certification of insurance coverage from the Contractor prior to commencing work.

B. Minimum Scope and Extent of Coverage

1. General Liability

Commercial General Liability, ISO coverage form number or equivalent CG 00 01 ("occurrence" basis), or I-SO coverage form number CG 00 02, or ISO equivalent.

If ISO equivalent or manuscript general liability coverage forms are used, minimum coverage will be as follows: Premises/Operations; Independent Contractors; Products/Completed Operations; personal Injury; Broad Form Property Damage including Completed Operations; Broad Form Contractual Liability Coverage to include Contractor's obligations under Article 1.11 Indemnification and any other Special Hazards required by the work of the contract.

2. Automobile Liability

Business Automobile Liability Insurance, ISO Coverage form number or equivalent CA 00 01 covering automobile liability, code 1 "ANY AUTO".

3. Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability

Statutory Workers' Compensation Insurance for Missouri and standard Employer's Liability Insurance, or the authorization to self-insure for such liability from the Missouri Division of Workers' Compensation.

4. Builder's Risk or Installation Floater Insurance

Insurance upon the work and all materials, equipment, supplies, temporary structures and similar items which may be incident to the performance of the work and located at or adjacent to the site, against loss or damage from fire and such other casualties as are included in extended coverage in broad "All Risk" form, including coverage for Flood and Earthquake, in an amount not less than the replacement cost of the work or this contract price, whichever is greater, with loss payable to Contractor and Owner as their respective interests may appear.

Contractor shall maintain sufficient insurance to cover the full value of the work and materials as the work progresses, and shall furnish Owner copies of all endorsements. If Builder's Risk Reporting- Form of Endorsement is used, Contractor shall make all reports as required therein so as to keep in force an amount of insurance which will equal the replacement cost of the work, materials, equipment, supplies, temporary structures, and other property covered thereby; and if, as a result of Contractor's failure to make any such report, the amount of insurance so recoverable shall be less than such replacement cost, Contractor's interest in the proceeds of such insurance, if any, shall be subordinated to Owner's interest to the end that Owner may receive full reimbursement for its loss.

C. Minimum Limits of Insurance

1. General Liability

Contractor	
\$2,000,000	combined single limit per occurrence for bodily injury, personal injury, and property damage
\$2,000,000	annual aggregate

2. Automobile Liability

\$2,000,000	combined single limit per occurrence for bodily injury and property damage
-------------	--

3. Workers' Compensation and Employers Liability

Workers' Compensation limits as required by applicable State Statutes (generally unlimited) and minimum of \$1,000,000 limit per accident for Employer's Liability.

General Liability and Automobile Liability insurance may be arranged under individual policies for the full limits required or by a combination of underlying policies with the balance provided by a form-following Excess or Umbrella Liability policy.

D. Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions

All deductibles, co-payment clauses, and self-insured retentions must be declared to and approved by the Owner. The Owner reserves the right to request the reduction or elimination of unacceptable deductibles or self-insured retentions, as they would apply to the Owner, and their respective officers, officials, agents, consultants and employees. Alternatively, the Owner may request Contractor to procure a bond guaranteeing

payment of losses and related investigations, claims administration, and defense expenses.

E. Other Insurance Provisions and Requirements

The respective insurance policies and coverage, as specified below, must contain, or be endorsed to contain the following conditions or provisions:

1. General Liability

The Owner, and its respective commissioners, officers, officials, agents, consultants and employees shall be endorsed as additional insured's by ISO form CG 20 26 Additional Insured - Designated Person or Organization. As additional insured's, they shall be covered as to work performed by or on behalf of the Contractor or as to liability which arises out of Contractor's activities or resulting from the performance of services or the delivery of goods called for by the Contract.

Contractor's insurance coverage shall be primary with respect to all additional insured's. Insurance of self-insurance programs maintained by the designated additional -insured's shall be excess of the Contractor's insurance and shall not contribute with it.

Additionally, the Contractor and Contractor's general liability insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Owner and any of their respective officers, officials, agents, consultants or employees for claims, losses, or expenses which arise out of Contractor's activities or result from the performance of services or the delivery of goods called for by the Contract.

Contractor's failure to comply with the terms and conditions of these insurance policies shall not affect or abridge coverage for the Owner, or for any of their officers, officials, agents, consultants or employees.

2. Automobile Insurance

The Owner, and their respective officers, officials, agents, consultants and employees shall be endorsed as additional insured's by ISO form CG 20 26 - Additional Insured Designated Person or Organization. As additional insured's, they shall be covered as to work performed by or on behalf of the Contractor or as to liability which arises out of Contractor's activities or resulting from the performance of services or the delivery of goods called for by the Contract.

Contractor's insurance coverage shall be primary with respect to all additional insured's. Insurance or self-insurance

programs maintained by the designated additional insured's shall be in excess of the Contractor's insurance and shall not contribute with it.

Additionally, the Contractor and Contractor's automobile insurer shall agree to waive all rights of subrogation against the Owner and any of their respective officers, officials, agents, consultants or employees for claims, losses, or expenses which arise out of Contractor's activities or result from the performance of services or the delivery of goods called for by the Contract.

Contractor's failure to comply with the terms and conditions of these insurance policies shall not affect or abridge coverage for the Owner or for any of its officers, officials, agents, consultants or employees.

3. Workers' Compensation/Employer's Liability

Contractor's workers' compensation insurance shall be endorsed with NCCI form WC 00 03 01 A - Alternative Employer Endorsement. The Alternative Employer Endorsement shall designate the Owner as "alternate employers."

4. All Coverages

Each insurance policy required by this section of the Contract shall contain a stipulation, endorsed if necessary, that the Owner will receive a minimum of a thirty (30) calendar day advance notice of any policy cancellation. Ten (10) calendar days advance notice is required for policy cancellation due to non-payment of premium.

F. Insurer Qualifications and Acceptability

Insurance required hereunder shall be issued by an A.M. Best, "B+" rated, Class IX insurance company approved to conduct insurance business in the state of Missouri.

G. Verification of Insurance Coverage

Prior to Owner issuing a Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall furnish the Owner with Certificate(s) of Insurance and with any applicable original endorsements evidencing the required insurance coverage. The insurance certificates and endorsements are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf. All certificates and endorsements received by the Owner are subject to review and approval by the Owner. The Owner reserves the right to require certified copies of all required policies at any time. If the scope of this contract will exceed one (1) year - or, if any of Contractor's applicable insurance coverage expires prior to completion of the work or services required under this contract -

the Contractor will provide a renewal or replacement certificate before continuing work or services hereunder. If the Contractor fails to provide documentation of required insurance coverage, the Owner may issue a stop work order and no additional contract completion time and/or compensation shall be granted as a result thereof.

## **ARTICLE 7 – SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION OF CONTRACT**

### **ARTICLE 7.1 - FOR SITE CONDITIONS**

When conditions at the site of the proposed work are considered by the Owner to be unsatisfactory for prosecution of the work, the Contractor may be ordered in writing to suspend the work or any part thereof until reasonable conditions exist. When such suspension is not due to fault or negligence of the Contractor, time allowed for completion of such suspended work will be extended by a period of time equal to that lost due to delay occasioned by ordered suspension. This will be a no cost time extension.

### **ARTICLE 7.2 - FOR CAUSE**

#### **A. Termination or Suspension for Cause:**

1. If the Contractor shall file for bankruptcy, or should make a general assignment for the benefit of the creditors, or if a receiver should be appointed on account of insolvency, or if the contractor should persistently or repeatedly refuse or fail to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials, or if the contractor should fail to make prompt payment to subcontractors or for material or labor, or persistently disregard laws, ordinances or the instructions of the Owner, or otherwise be guilty of a substantial violation of any provision of this contract, then the Owner may serve notice on the Contractor and the surety setting forth the violations and demanding compliance with this contract. Unless within ten (10) consecutive calendar days after serving such notice, such violations shall cease and satisfactory arrangements for correction be made, the Owner may suspend the Contractor's right to proceed with the work or terminate this contract.
2. In the event the Owner suspends Contractor's right to proceed with the work or terminates the contract, the Owner may demand that the Contractor's surety take over and complete the work on this contract, after the surety submits a written proposal to the Owner and receives written approval and upon the surety's failure or refusal to do so within ten (10) consecutive

calendar days after demand therefore, the Owner may take over the work and prosecute the same to completion by bid or negotiated contract, or the Owner may elect to take possession of and utilize in completing the work such materials, supplies, appliances and plant as may be on the site of the work, and all subcontractors, if the Owner elects, shall be bound to perform their contracts.

- B. The Contractor and its surety shall be and remain liable to the Owner for any excess cost or damages occasioned to the Owner as a result of the actions above set forth.
- C. The Contractor in the event of such suspension or termination shall not be entitled to receive any further payments under this contract until the work is wholly finished. Then if the unpaid balance under this contract shall exceed all expenses of the Owner as certified by the Director, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor; but, if such expenses shall exceed the unpaid balance as certified by the Director, the Contractor and their surety shall be liable for and shall pay the difference and any damages to the Owner.
- D. In exercising Owner's right to secure completion of the work under any of the provisions hereof, the Director shall have the right to exercise Owner's sole discretion as to the manner, methods and reasonableness of costs of completing the work.
- E. The rights of the Owner to suspend or terminate as herein provided shall be cumulative and not exclusive and shall be in addition to any other remedy provided by law.
- F. The Contractor in the event of such suspension or termination may be declared ineligible for Owner contracts for a minimal period of twelve (12) months. Further, no contract will be awarded to any Contractor who lists in their bid form any subcontractor whose prior performance has contributed, as determined by the Owner, to a breach of a contract. In order to be considered for state-awarded contracts after this period, the Contractor/subcontractor will be required to forward acceptance reports to the Owner regarding successful completion of non-state projects during the intervening twelve (12) months from the date of default. No contracts will be awarded to a subcontractor/Contractor until the ability to perform responsibly in the private sector has been proven to the Owner.

### **ARTICLE 7.3 -- FOR CONVENIENCE**

- A. The Owner may terminate or suspend the Contract or any portion of the Work without cause at any time, and at the Owner's convenience. Notification of a termination or suspension shall be in writing



and shall be given to the Contractor and their surety. If the Contract is suspended, the notice will contain the anticipated duration of the suspension or the conditions under which work will be permitted to resume. If appropriate, the Contractor will be requested to demobilize and re-mobilize and will be reimbursed time and costs associated with the suspension.

B. Upon receipt of notification, the Contractor shall:

1. Cease operations when directed.
2. Take actions to protect the work and any stored materials.
3. Place no further subcontracts or orders for material, supplies, services or facilities except as may be necessary to complete the portion of the Contract that has not been terminated. No claim for payment of materials or supplies ordered after the termination date shall be considered.
4. Terminate all existing subcontracts, rentals, material, and equipment orders.

5. Settle all outstanding liabilities arising from termination with subcontractors and suppliers.

6. Transfer title and deliver to the Owner, work in progress, completed work, supplies and other material produced or acquire for the work terminated, and completed or partially completed plans, drawings information and other property that, if the Contract had been completed, would be required to be furnished to the Owner.

C. For termination without cause and at the Owner's convenience, in addition to payment for work completed prior to date of termination, the Contractor may be entitled to payment of other documented costs directly associated with the early termination of the contract. Payment for anticipated profit and unapplied overhead will not be allowed.

## SECTION 007300 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

### 1.0 GENERAL:

- A. These Supplementary General Conditions clarify, add, delete, or otherwise modify standard terms and conditions of DIVISION 0, BIDDING AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS.

### 2.0 CONTACTS:

Designer: Robert Schmitt  
Crossed Swords Engineering  
1619 NE Oak Tree Drive  
Lee's Summit, MO, 64086  
Telephone: 816-309-0099  
Email: [Robert7721@aol.com](mailto:Robert7721@aol.com)

Construction Representative: Ricky Howard  
Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction  
836 N. Scott Ave.  
Belton, MO, 64012  
Telephone: 816-322-1166  
Email: [ricky.howard@oa.mo.gov](mailto:ricky.howard@oa.mo.gov)

Project Manager: Christopher Lloyd  
Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction  
301 West High Street, Room 730  
Jefferson City, Missouri 65101  
Telephone: 573-526-0160  
Email: Christopher. [Lloyd@oa.mo.gov](mailto:Lloyd@oa.mo.gov)

Contract Specialist: April Howser  
Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction  
301 West High Street, Room 730  
Jefferson City, Missouri 65101  
Telephone: 573-751-0053  
Email: [april.howser@oa.mo.gov](mailto:april.howser@oa.mo.gov)

### 3.0 NOTICE: ALL BID MATERIALS ARE DUE AT THE TIME OF BID SUBMITTAL. THERE IS NO SECOND SUBMITTAL FOR THIS PROJECT.

### 4.0 FURNISHING CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS:

- A. The Owner will furnish the Contractor with approximately 3 complete sets of drawings and specifications at no charge.
- B. The Owner will furnish the Contractor with approximately 3 sets of explanatory or change drawings at no charge.
- C. The Contractor may make copies of the documents as needed with no additional cost to the Owner.

### 5.0 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

Contractor and subcontractors at any tier shall comply with RSMo 292.675 and Article 1.3, E, of Section 007213, General Conditions.

# Missouri

## Division of Labor Standards

### WAGE AND HOUR SECTION



MICHAEL L. PARSON, Governor

# Annual Wage Order No. 29

Section 011  
**BUCHANAN COUNTY**

In accordance with Section 290.262 RSMo 2000, within thirty (30) days after a certified copy of this Annual Wage Order has been filed with the Secretary of State as indicated below, any person who may be affected by this Annual Wage Order may object by filing an objection in triplicate with the Labor and Industrial Relations Commission, P.O. Box 599, Jefferson City, MO 65102-0599. Such objections must set forth in writing the specific grounds of objection. Each objection shall certify that a copy has been furnished to the Division of Labor Standards, P.O. Box 449, Jefferson City, MO 65102-0449 pursuant to 8 CSR 20-5.010(1). A certified copy of the Annual Wage Order has been filed with the Secretary of State of Missouri.

Original Signed by \_\_\_\_\_

Todd Smith, Director  
Division of Labor Standards

Filed With Secretary of State: \_\_\_\_\_ **March 10, 2022**

Last Date Objections May Be Filed: **April 11, 2022**

Prepared by Missouri Department of Labor and Industrial Relations

OCCUPATIONAL TITLE	**Prevailing Hourly Rate
Asbestos Worker	\$67.48
Boilermaker	\$28.90*
Bricklayer	\$56.91
Carpenter	\$54.67
Lather	
Linoleum Layer	
Millwright	
Pile Driver	
Cement Mason	\$28.90*
Plasterer	
Communications Technician	\$28.90*
Electrician (Inside Wireman)	\$53.90
Electrician Outside Lineman	\$28.90*
Lineman Operator	
Lineman - Tree Trimmer	
Groundman	
Groundman - Tree Trimmer	
Elevator Constructor	\$28.90*
Glazier	\$28.90*
Ironworker	\$66.31
Laborer	\$43.28
General Laborer	
First Semi-Skilled	
Second Semi-Skilled	
Mason	\$54.10
Marble Mason	
Marble Finisher	
Terrazzo Worker	
Terrazzo Finisher	
Tile Setter	
Tile Finisher	
Operating Engineer	\$28.90*
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group III-A	
Group IV	
Group V	
Painter	\$40.08
Plumber	\$65.60
Pipe Fitter	
Roofer	\$53.35
Sheet Metal Worker	\$68.44
Sprinkler Fitter	\$28.90*
Truck Driver	\$41.63
Truck Control Service Driver	
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	

\*The Division of Labor Standards received fewer than 1,000 reportable hours for this occupational title. The public works contracting minimum wage is established for this occupational title using data provided by Missouri Economic Research and Information Center.

\*\*The Prevailing Hourly Rate includes any applicable fringe benefit amounts for each occupational title as defined in Section 290.210 RSMo.

Heavy Construction Rates for  
BUCHANAN County

Section 011

OCCUPATIONAL TITLE	**Prevailing Hourly Rate
Carpenter	\$62.33
Millwright	
Pile Driver	
Electrician (Outside Lineman)	\$28.90*
Lineman Operator	
Lineman - Tree Trimmer	
Groundman	
Groundman - Tree Trimmer	
Laborer	\$45.77
General Laborer	
Skilled Laborer	
Operating Engineer	\$55.44
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	
Truck Driver	\$28.90*
Truck Control Service Driver	
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	

Use Heavy Construction Rates on Highway and Heavy construction in accordance with the classifications of construction work established in 8 CSR 30-3.040(3).

Use Building Construction Rates on Building construction in accordance with the classifications of construction work established in 8 CSR 30-3.040(2).

If a worker is performing work on a heavy construction project within an occupational title that is not listed on the Heavy Construction Rate Sheet, use the rate for that occupational title as shown on the Building Construction Rate Sheet.

\*The Division of Labor Standards received fewer than 1,000 reportable hours for this occupational title. The public works contracting minimum wage is established for this occupational title using data provided by Missouri Economic Research and Information Center.

\*\*The Prevailing Hourly Rate includes any applicable fringe benefit amounts for each occupational title as defined in Section 290.210 RSMo.

# OVERTIME and HOLIDAYS

## OVERTIME

For all work performed on a Sunday or a holiday, not less than twice (2x) the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed or the public works contracting minimum wage, whichever is applicable, shall be paid to all workers employed by or on behalf of any public body engaged in the construction of public works, exclusive of maintenance work.

For all overtime work performed, not less than one and one-half (1½) the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed or the public works contracting minimum wage, whichever is applicable, shall be paid to all workers employed by or on behalf of any public body engaged in the construction of public works, exclusive of maintenance work or contractual obligation. For purposes of this subdivision, "**overtime work**" shall include work that exceeds ten hours in one day and work in excess of forty hours in one calendar week; and

A thirty-minute lunch period on each calendar day shall be allowed for each worker on a public works project, provided that such time shall not be considered as time worked.

## HOLIDAYS

January first;  
The last Monday in May;  
July fourth;  
The first Monday in September;  
November eleventh;  
The fourth Thursday in November; and  
December twenty-fifth;

If any holiday falls on a Sunday, the following Monday shall be considered a holiday.

## SECTION 011000 – SUMMARY OF WORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Project consists of the Replacement of HVAC Equipment and the Boiler System at the Riverbend Treatment Center.
  - 1. Project Location: Riverbend Treatment Center, 5910 Mitchell Ave. St. Joseph MO 64507.
  - 2. Owner: State of Missouri, Office of Administration, Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction, Harry S Truman State Office Building, Post Office Box 809, 301 West High Street, Jefferson City, Missouri 65102.
- B. Contract Documents, dated 5/17/2023 were prepared for the Project by **Crossed Swords Engineering 1619 NE Oak Tree Drive, Lee's Summit MO.**
- C. The Work includes consists of the replacement of the Building Boiler system with pumps and hydronic accessories at the Core Building, replacement of the AHUs and Condensing Units at the three Housing units, and replacement of HVAC controls throughout the campus.
- D. The Work will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.3 WORK SEQUENCE

- A. The Work will be phased for the Housing Units for construction such that only one unit shall be out of operation at a time.

#### 1.4 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

- A. Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations to areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the Work is indicated.
  - 1. Owner Occupancy: Allow for Owner occupancy. Only conduct work on one "Housing" unit at a time. Coordinate with owner during construction.
  - 2. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to the Owner, the Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- B. Use of the Existing Building: Maintain the existing building in a weathertight condition throughout the construction period. Repair damage cause by construction operations. Take all precautions necessary to protect the building and its occupants during the construction period.

## **1.5 OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: The Owner will occupy the site and existing building during the entire construction period. Only conduct work on one “Housing” unit at a time. Cooperate with the Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with the Owner’s operations.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)**

**END OF SECTION 011000**



## **SECTION 012100 – ALLOWANCES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
  - 1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Weather allowances.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders for allowances.

#### **1.3 WEATHER ALLOWANCE**

- A. Included within the completion period for this project are a specified number of “bad weather” days (see Schedule of Allowances).
- B. The Contractor’s progress schedule shall clearly indicate the bad weather day allowance as an “activity” or “activities”. In the event weather conditions preclude performance of critical work activities for 50% or more of the Contractor’s scheduled workday, that day shall be declared unavailable for work due to weather (a “bad weather” day) and charged against the above allowance. Critical work activities will be determined by review of the Contractor’s current progress schedule.
- C. The Contractor’s Representative and the Construction Representative shall agree monthly on the number of “bad weather” days to be charged against the allowance. This determination will be documented in writing and be signed by the Contractor and the Construction Representatives. If there is a failure to agree on all or part of the “bad weather” days for a particular month, that disagreement shall be noted on this written document and signed by each party’s representative. Failure of the Contractor’s representative to sign the “bad weather” day documentation after it is presented, with or without the notes of disagreement, shall constitute agreement with the “bad weather” day determination contained in that document.
- D. There will be no modification to the time of contract performance due solely to the failure to deplete the “bad weather” day allowance.

- E. Once this allowance is depleted, a no cost Change Order time extension will be executed for “bad weather” days, as defined above, encountered during the remainder of the Project.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES**

- A. Weather Allowance: Included within the completion period for this Project Five (5) “bad weather” days.

**END OF SECTION 012100**

## **SECTION 012600 – CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract Modifications.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1, Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements for handling and processing Allowances.
  - 2. Division 1, Section 013115 "Project Management Communications" for administrative requirements for communications.
  - 3. Division 0, Section 007213, Article 3.1 "Acceptable Substitutions" for administrative procedures for handling Requests for Substitutions made after Contract award.
  - 4. Division 0, Section 007213, Article 4.0 "Changes in the Work" for Change Order requirements.

#### **1.3 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION**

- A. In the event that the Contractor or Subcontractor, at any tier, determines that some portion of the Drawings, Specifications, or other Contract Documents requires clarification or interpretation, the Contractor shall submit a "Request for Information" (RFI) in writing to the Designer. A RFI may only be submitted by the Contractor and shall only be submitted on the RFI forms provided by the Owner. The Contractor shall clearly and concisely set forth the issue for which clarification or interpretation is sought and why a response is needed. In the RFI, the Contractor shall set forth an interpretation or understanding of the requirement along with reasons why such an understanding was reached.
- B. Responses to RFI shall be issued within ten (10) working days of receipt of the Request from the Contractor unless the Designer determines that a longer time is necessary to provide an adequate response. If a longer time is determined necessary by the Designer, the Designer will, within five (5) working days of receipt of the request, notify the Contractor of the anticipated response time. If the Contractor submits a RFI on a time sensitive activity on the current project schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any time extension due to the time it takes the Designer to respond to the request provided that the Designer responds within the ten (10) working days set forth above.
- C. Responses from the Designer will not change any requirement of the Contract Documents. In the event the Contractor believes that a response to a RFI will cause a change to the requirements of the Contract Document, the Contractor shall give written notice to the Designer requesting a Change Order for the work. Failure to give such written notice within ten (10) working days, shall waive the Contractor's right to seek additional time or cost under Article 4, "Changes in the Work" of the General Conditions.

#### **1.4 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. Designer will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Amount or the Contract Time, on "Designer's Supplemental Instructions" (DSI).

#### **1.5 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- A. The Designer or Owner Representative will issue a detailed description of proposed Changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Amount or the Contract Time. The proposed Change Description will be issued using the "Request for Proposal" (RFP) form. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Proposal Requests issued by the Designer or Owner Representative are for information only. Do not consider them instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within ten (10) working days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a proposal for the cost adjustments to the Contract Amount and the Contract Time necessary to execute the Change. The Contractor shall submit his proposal on the appropriate Change Order Detailed Breakdown form. Subcontractors may use the appropriate Change Order Detailed Breakdown form or submit their proposal on their letterhead provided the same level of detail is included. All proposals shall include:
    - a. A detailed breakdown of costs per Article 4.1 of the General Conditions.
    - b. If requesting additional time per Article 4.2 of the General Conditions, include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the Change including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship.

#### **1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, the Designer or Owner Representative will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on the "Change Order" form.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 012600**

## **SECTION 013100 – COORDINATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Projects including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Coordination Drawings.
  - 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
  - 3. Project meetings.
- B. Each Contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific Contractor.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1, Section 013200 "Schedules" for preparing and submitting Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Articles 1.8.B and 1.8.C of Section 007213 "General Conditions" for coordinating meetings onsite.
  - 3. Article 5.4.H of Section 007213 "General Conditions" for coordinating Closeout of the Contract.

#### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections, which depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
- B. Coordination: Each Contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each Contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other Contractors to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
  - 4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required

maintenance, service, and repair of all components including mechanical and electrical.

- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate Contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
  
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other Contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Startup and adjustment of systems.
  - 8. Project Closeout activities.
  
- E. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. Refer to other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.
  
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within fifteen (15) work days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

#### **1.5 PROJECT MEETINGS**

- A. The Owner's Construction Representative will schedule a Pre-Construction Meeting prior to beginning of construction. The date, time, and exact place of this meeting will be determined after Contract Award and notification of all interested parties. The

Contractor shall arrange to have the Job Superintendent and all prime Subcontractors present at the meeting. During the Pre-Construction Meeting, the construction procedures and information necessary for submitting payment requests will be discussed and materials distributed along with any other pertinent information.

1. Minutes: Designer will record and distribute meeting minutes.

B. Progress Meetings: The Owner's Construction Representative will conduct Monthly Progress Meetings as stated in Articles 1.8.B and 1.8.C of Section 007213 "General Conditions".

1. Minutes: Designer will record and distribute to Contractor the meeting minutes.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 013100**

## SECTION 013115 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT COMMUNICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.
- B. Division 1, Section 013300 - Submittals
- C. Division 1, Section 012600 – Contract Modification Procedures

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Project Management Communications: The Contractor shall use the Internet web based project management communications tool, E-Builder® ASP software, and protocols included in that software during this project. The use of project management communications as herein described does not replace or change any contractual responsibilities of the participants.
  - 1. Project management communications is available through E-Builder® as provided by "e-Builder®" in the form and manner required by the Owner.
  - 2. The project communications database is on-line and fully functional. User registration, electronic and computer equipment, and Internet connections are the responsibility of each project participant. The sharing of user accounts is prohibited
- B. Support: E-Builder® will provide on-going support through on-line help files.
- C. Copyrights and Ownership: Nothing in this specification or the subsequent communications supersedes the parties' obligations and rights for copyright or document ownership as established by the Contract Documents. The use of CAD files, processes or design information distributed in this system is intended only for the project specified herein.
- D. Purpose: The intent of using E-Builder® is to improve project work efforts by promoting timely initial communications and responses. Secondly, to reduce the number of paper documents while providing improved record keeping by creation of electronic document files
- E. Authorized Users: Access to the web site will be by individuals who are authorized users.
  - 1. Individuals shall complete the E-Builder New Company/User Request Form located at the following web site: <https://oa.mo.gov/facilities/vendor-links/contractor-forms>.



Completed forms shall be emailed to the following email address: [OA.FMDCE-BuilderSupport@oa.mo.gov](mailto:OA.FMDCE-BuilderSupport@oa.mo.gov).

2. Authorized users will be contacted directly and assigned a temporary user password.
  3. Individuals shall be responsible for the proper use of their passwords and access to data as agents of the company in which they are employed.
- F. Administrative Users: Administrative users have access and control of user licenses and all posted items. **DO NOT POST PRIVATE OR YOUR COMPANY CONFIDENTIAL ITEMS IN THE DATABASE!** Improper or abusive language toward any party or repeated posting of items intended to deceive or disrupt the work of the project will not be tolerated and will result in deletion of the offensive items and revocation of user license at the sole discretion of the Administrative User(s).
- G. Communications: The use of fax, email and courier communication for this project is discouraged in favor of using E-Builder® to send messages. Communication functions are as follows:
1. Document Integrity and Revisions:
    - a. Documents, comments, drawings and other records posted to the system shall remain for the project record. The authorship time and date shall be recorded for each document submitted to the system. Submitting a new document or record with a unique ID, authorship, and time stamp shall be the method used to make modifications or corrections.
    - b. The system shall make it easy to identify revised or superseded documents and their predecessors.
    - c. Server or Client side software enhancements during the life of the project shall not alter or restrict the content of data published by the system. System upgrades shall not affect access to older documents or software.
  2. Document Security:
    - a. The system shall provide a method for communication of documents. Documents shall allow security group assignment to respect the contractual parties communication except for Administrative Users. **DO NOT POST PRIVATE OR YOUR COMPANY CONFIDENTIAL ITEMS IN THE DATABASE!**
  3. Document Integration:
    - a. Documents of various types shall be logically related to one another and discoverable. For example, requests for information, daily field reports, supplemental sketches and photographs shall be capable of reference as related records.
  4. Reporting:
    - a. The system shall be capable of generating reports for work in progress, and logs for each document type. Summary reports generated by the system shall be available for team members.
  5. Notifications and Distribution:
    - a. Document distribution to project members shall be accomplished both within the extranet system and via email as appropriate. Project document distribution to parties outside of the project communication system shall be

accomplished by secure email of outgoing documents and attachments, readable by a standard email client.

6. Required Document Types:
  - a. RFI, Request for Information.
  - b. Submittals, including record numbering by drawing and specification section.
  - c. Transmittals, including record of documents and materials delivered in hard copy.
  - d. Meeting Minutes.
  - e. Application for Payments (Draft or Pencil).
  - f. Review Comments.
  - g. Field Reports.
  - h. Construction Photographs.
  - i. Drawings.
  - j. Supplemental Sketches.
  - k. Schedules.
  - l. Specifications.
  - m. Request for Proposals
  - n. Designer's Supplemental Instructions
  - o. Punch Lists

H. Record Keeping: Except for paper documents, which require original signatures and large format documents (greater than 8½ x 11 inches), all other 8½ x 11 inches documents shall be submitted by transmission in electronic form to the E-Builder® web site by licensed users.

- a. The Owner and his representatives, the Designer and his consultants, and the Contractor and his Sub Contractors and suppliers at every tier shall respond to documents received in electronic form on the web site, and consider them as if received in paper document form.
- b. The Owner and his representatives, the Designer and his consultants, and the Contractor and his Sub Contractors and suppliers at every tier reserves the right to and shall reply or respond by transmissions in electronic form on the web site to documents actually received in paper document form.
- c. The Owner and his representatives, the Designer and his consultants, and the Contractor and his Sub Contractors and suppliers at every tier reserves the right to and shall copy any paper document into electronic form and make same available on the web site.

I. Minimum Equipment and Internet Connection: In addition to other requirements specified in this Section, the Owner and his representatives, the Construction Manager and his representatives, the Architect and his consultants, and the Contractor and his sub-contractors and suppliers at every tier required to have a user license(s) shall be responsible for the following:

1. Providing suitable computer systems for each licensed user at the users normal work location<sup>1</sup> with high-speed Internet access, i.e. DSL, local cable company's Internet connection, or T1 connection.
2. Each of the above referenced computer systems shall have the following minimum system<sup>2</sup> and software requirements:
  - a. Desktop configuration (Laptop configurations are similar and should be equal to or exceed desktop system.)
    - 1) Operating System: Windows XP or newer
    - 2) Internet Browser: Internet Explorer 6.01SP2+ (Recommend IE7.0+)
    - 3) Minimum Recommend Connection Speed: 256K or above
    - 4) Processor Speed: 1 Gigahertz and above
    - 5) RAM: 512 mb
    - 6) Operating system and software shall be properly licensed.
    - 7) Internet Explorer version 7 (current version is a free distribution for download). This specification is not intended to restrict the host server or client computers provided that industry standard HTTP clients may access the published content.
    - 8) Adobe Acrobat Reader (current version is a free distribution for download).
    - 9) Users should have the standard Microsoft Office Suite (current version must be purchased) or the equivalent.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable.)

END OF SECTION 013115

---

<sup>1</sup> The normal work location is the place where the user is assigned for more than one-half of his time working on this project.

<sup>2</sup> The minimum system herein will not be sufficient for many tasks and may not be able to process all documents and files stored in the E-Builder® Documents area.

## **SECTION 013200 – SCHEDULES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes requirements for a Bar Chart Schedule for the project construction activities, schedule of submittals, and schedule for testing.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS – (Not Applicable)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. The Contractor shall submit to the Designer, within ten (10) working days following the Notice to Proceed, a Progress Schedule including Schedule of Values showing the rate of progress the Contractor agrees to maintain and the order in which he proposed to carry out the various phases of Work. No payments shall be made to the Contractor until the Progress Schedule has been approved by the Owner.
  - 1. The Schedule of Values must have the following line items included with the value of the item as indicated below:
    - a. O&M's (Owner's Manual)
      - 1) \$1,000,000.00 (One million) and under – 2% of the total contract amount
      - 2) Over \$1,000,000.00 (One million) – 1% of the total contract amount
    - b. Close Out Documents
      - 1) \$1,000,000.00 (One million) and under – 2% of the total contract amount
      - 2) Over \$1,000,000.00 (One million) – 1% of the total contract amount
    - c. General Conditions
      - 1) No more than 10%
- B. The Contractor shall submit an updated Schedule for presentation at each Monthly Progress Meeting. The Schedule shall be updated by the Contractor as necessary to reflect the current Schedule and its relationship to the original Schedule. The updated Schedule shall reflect any changes in the logic, sequence, durations, or completion date. Payments to the Contractor shall be suspended if the Progress Schedule is not adequately updated to reflect actual conditions.

- C. The Contractor shall submit Progress Schedules to Subcontractors to permit coordinating their Progress Schedules to the general construction Work. The Contractor shall coordinate preparation and processing of Schedules and reports with performance of other construction activities.

### **3.2 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE – BAR CHART SCHEDULE**

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: The Contractor shall prepare a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal bar chart-type Contractor’s Construction Schedule. The Contractor for general construction shall prepare the Construction Schedule for the entire Project. The Schedule shall show the percentage of work to be completed at any time, anticipated monthly payments by Owner, as well as significant dates (such as completion of excavation, concrete foundation work, underground lines, superstructure, rough-ins, enclosure, hanging of fixtures, etc.) which shall serve as check points to determine compliance with the approved Schedule. The Schedule shall also include an activity for the number of “bad” weather days specified in Section 012100 – Allowances.
  - 1. The Contractor shall provide a separate time bar for each significant construction activity. Provide a continuous vertical line to identify the first working day of each week.
    - a. If practical, use the same Schedule of Values breakdown for schedule time bars.
  - 2. The Contractor shall provide a base activity time bar showing duration for each construction activity. Each bar is to indicate start and completion dates for the activity. The Contractor is to place a contrasting bar below each original schedule activity time for indicating actual progress and planned remaining duration for the activity.
  - 3. The Contractor shall prepare the Schedule on a minimal number of separate sheets to readily show the data for the entire construction period.
  - 4. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved. Coordinate each element on schedule with other construction activities. Include minor elements involved in the overall sequence of the Work. Show each activity in proper sequence. Indicate graphically the sequences necessary for completion of related portions of the Work.
  - 5. Coordinate the Contractor’s Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittal Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 6. Indicate the Intent to Award and the Contract Substantial Completion dates on the schedule.

**END OF SECTION 013200**

## SECTION 013300 – SUBMITTALS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.
- B. Division 1, Section 013115 “Project Management Communications” for administrative requirements for communications.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submittals required for performance of the Work including the following:
  - 1. Shop Drawings
  - 2. Product Data
  - 3. Samples
  - 4. Quality Assurance Submittals
  - 5. Construction Photographs
  - 6. Operating and Maintenance Manuals
  - 7. Warranties
- B. Administrative Submittals: Refer to General and Supplementary Conditions other applicable Division 1 Sections and other Contract Documents for requirements for administrative submittals. Such submittals include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction Progress Schedule including Schedule of Values
  - 2. Performance and Payment Bonds
  - 3. Insurance Certificates
  - 4. Applications for Payment
  - 5. Certified Payroll Reports
  - 6. Partial and Final Receipt of Payment and Release Forms
  - 7. Affidavit – Compliance with Prevailing Wage Law
  - 8. Record Drawings
  - 9. Notifications, Permits, etc.
- C. The Contractor is obliged and responsible to check all shop drawings and schedules to assure compliance with contract plans and specifications. The Contractor is responsible for the content of the shop drawings and coordination with other contract work. Shop drawings and schedules shall indicate, in detail, all parts of an Item or Work including erection and setting instructions and integration with the Work of other trades.
- D. The Contractor shall at all times make a copy, of all approved submittals, available on site to the Construction Representative.

### 1.3 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. The Contractor shall comply with the General and Supplementary Conditions and other applicable sections of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall submit, with such promptness as to cause no delay in his work or in that of any other contractors, all required submittals indicated in Part 3.1 of this section and elsewhere in the Contract Documents. Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities. Transmit each submittal sufficiently in advance of performance of related construction activities to avoid delay.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related elements of the Work so processing will not be delayed by the need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. The Designer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until all related submittals are received.
- B. Each drawing and/or series of drawings submitted must be accompanied by a letter of transmittal giving a list of the titles and numbers of the drawings. Each series shall be numbered consecutively for ready reference and each drawing shall be marked with the following information:
  - 1. Date of Submission
  - 2. Name of Project
  - 3. Location
  - 4. Section Number of Specification
  - 5. State Project Number
  - 6. Name of Submitting Contractor
  - 7. Name of Subcontractor
  - 8. Indicate if Item is submitted as specified or as a substitution

### 1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Comply with the General Conditions, Article 3.2.
- B. The Contractor shall submit newly prepared information drawn accurately to scale. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise indicate deviations from the Contract Documents. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard information as the basis of Shop Drawings. Standard information prepared without specific reference to the Project is not a Shop Drawing.
- C. Shop Drawings include fabrication and installation drawings, setting diagrams, schedules, patterns, templates, and similar drawings including the following information:
  - 1. Dimensions
  - 2. Identification of products and materials included by sheet and detail number
  - 3. Compliance with specified standards
  - 4. Notation of coordination requirements

5. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement
6. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8½"x11" but no larger than 36"x48".

## 1.5 PRODUCT DATA

- A. The Contractor shall comply with the General Conditions, Article 3.2.
- B. The Contractor shall collect Product Data into a single submittal for each element of construction or system. Product Data includes printed information, such as manufacturer's installation instructions, catalog cuts, standard color charts, roughing-in diagrams and templates, standard wiring diagrams, and performance curves.
  1. Mark each copy to show applicable choices and options. Where printed Product Data includes information on several products that are not required, mark copies to indicate the applicable information including the following information:
    - a. Manufacturer's printed recommendations
    - b. Compliance with Trade Association standards
    - c. Compliance with recognized Testing Agency standards
    - d. Application of Testing Agency labels and seals
    - e. Notation of dimensions verified by field measurement
    - f. Notation of coordination requirements
  2. Do not submit Product Data until compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents has been confirmed.

## 1.6 SAMPLES

- A. The Contractor shall comply with the General Conditions, Article 3.2.
- B. The Contractor shall submit full-size, fully fabricated samples, cured and finished as specified, and physically identical with the material or product proposed. Samples include partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components, cuts or containers of materials, color range sets, and swatches showing color, texture, and pattern.
  1. The Contractor shall mount or display samples in the manner to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Prepare samples to match the Designer's sample including the following:
    - a. Specification Section number and reference
    - b. Generic description of the Sample
    - c. Sample source
    - d. Product name or name of the Manufacturer
    - e. Compliance with recognized standards
    - f. Availability and delivery time
  2. The Contractor shall submit samples for review of size, kind, color, pattern, and texture. Submit samples for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and a comparison of these characteristics between the final submittal and the actual component as delivered and installed.



- a. Where variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in the material or product represented, submit at least three (3) multiple units that show approximate limits of the variations.
  - b. Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements for samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
  - c. Refer to other Sections for samples to be returned to the Contractor for incorporation in the Work. Such samples must be undamaged at time of use. On the transmittal, indicate special requests regarding disposition of sample submittals.
  - d. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as the Owner's property, are the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site prior to Substantial Completion.
3. Field samples are full-size examples erected onsite to illustrate finishes, coatings, or finish materials and to establish the Project standard.
- a. The Contractor shall comply with submittal requirements to the fullest extent possible. The Contractor shall process transmittal forms to provide a record of activity.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE DOCUMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall comply with the General Conditions, Article 3.2
- B. The Contractor shall submit quality control submittals including design data, certifications, manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer's field reports, and other quality-control submittals as required under other Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Certifications: Where other Sections of the Specifications require certification that a product, material, or installation complies with specified requirements, submit a notarized certification from the Manufacturer certifying compliance with specified requirements.
  1. Signature: Certification shall be signed by an officer of the Manufacturer or other individual authorized to contractually bind the Company.
- D. Inspection and Test Reports: The Contractor shall submit the required inspection and test reports from independent testing agencies as specified in this Section and in other Sections of the Contract Documents.
- E. Construction Photographs: The Contractor shall submit record construction photographs as specified in this Section and in other Sections of the Contract Documents.
  1. The Contractor shall submit digital photographs. The Construction Administrator shall determine the quantity and naming convention at the preconstruction meeting.
  2. The Contractor shall identify each photograph with project name, location, number, date, time, and orientation.
  3. The Contractor shall submit progress photographs monthly unless specified otherwise. Photographs shall be taken one (1) week prior to submitting.
  4. The Contractor shall take four (4) site photographs from differing directions and a minimum of five (5) interior photographs indicating the relative progress of the Work.

1.8 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS AND WARRANTIES

- A. The Contractor shall submit all required manufacturer’s operating instructions, maintenance/service manuals, and warranties in accordance with the General Conditions, Article 3.5, and Supplementary Conditions along with this and other Sections of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 REQUIRED SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor shall submit the following information for materials and equipment to be provided under this contract.

See attached E Builder Submittal Register (Excel Format)

SPEC SECTION	TITLE	CATEGORY
013200	Schedules	Construction Schedule
013200	Schedules	Schedule of Values
013200	Schedules	List of Subcontractors
013200	Schedules	Major Material Suppliers
017900	Demonstration and Training	Reports
024119	Selective Demolition Pre-Work Photo documentation	Certification
024119	Selective Demolition Pre-Work Photo documentation	Reports
024119	Selective Demolition Pre-Work Photo documentation	Construction Schedule
024119	Selective Demolition Pre-Work Photo documentation	Record Photographs
078413	Penetration Fire Stopping	Product Data
078413	Penetration Fire Stopping	Certification
079200	Joint Sealants	Product Data
079200	Joint Sealants	Certification
079200	Joint Sealants	Warranty
099113	Exterior Painting	Shop Drawings
099113	Exterior Painting	Product Data
099113	Exterior Painting	Sample
099123	Interior Painting	Shop Drawings
099123	Interior Painting	Product Data
099123	Interior Painting	Sample
230500	Common Work Results for HVAC	Certification
230519	Meters and Gages for HVAC	Shop Drawings
230519	Meters and Gages for HVAC	Product Data
230519	Meters and Gages for HVAC	Operation / Maintenance Manual
230523	Valves for HVAC Piping	Product Data
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment	Product Data

230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment	Certification
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment	Product Data
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	Certification
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	Test Report
230700	HVAC Insulation	Product Data
230700	HVAC Insulation	Shop Drawings
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Shop Drawings
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Product Data
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Certification
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Reports
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Operation / Maintenance Manual
230923	Direct Digital Controls (DDC) System for HVAC	Warranty
230923.11	Control Valves	Shop Drawings
230923.11	Control Valves	Product Data
230923.11	Control Valves	Operation / Maintenance Manual
230923.14	Flow Instruments	Shop Drawings
230923.14	Flow Instruments	Product Data
230923.14	Flow Instruments	Operation / Maintenance Manual
230923.14	Flow Instruments	Certification
230923.23	Pressure Instruments	Shop Drawings
230923.23	Pressure Instruments	Product Data
230923.23	Pressure Instruments	Operation / Maintenance Manual
230923.27	Temperature Instruments	Shop Drawings
230923.27	Temperature Instruments	Product Data
231123	Natural Gas Piping	Certification
231123	Natural Gas Piping	Product Data
232113	Hydronic Piping	Certification
232113	Hydronic Piping	Product Data
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties	Product Data
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties	Operation / Maintenance Manual
232123	Hydronic Pumps	Shop Drawings
232123	Hydronic Pumps	Product Data
232123	Hydronic Pumps	Operation / Maintenance Manual
232123	Hydronic Pumps	Warranty
232300	Refrigerant Piping	Product Data
232300	Refrigerant Piping	Operation / Maintenance Manual
232500	HVAC Water Treatment	Shop Drawings
232500	HVAC Water Treatment	Product Data
232500	HVAC Water Treatment	Reports
233113	Metal Ducts	Shop Drawings
233113	Metal Ducts	Product Data
233300	Air Duct Accessories	Shop Drawings

233300	Air Duct Accessories	Product Data
233423	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	Product Data
233423	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	Certification
233423	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	Shop Drawings
233423	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	Operation / Maintenance Manual
233423	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	Warranty
235216	Condensing Boilers	Shop Drawings
235216	Condensing Boilers	Product Data
235216	Condensing Boilers	Operation / Maintenance Manual
235216	Condensing Boilers	Warranty
235513.16	Gas-Fired Duct Heaters	Product Data
235513.16	Gas-Fired Duct Heaters	Operation / Maintenance Manual
235513.16	Gas-Fired Duct Heaters	Warranty
237313	Modular Indoor Central Station Air Handling Units	Product Data
237313	Modular Indoor Central Station Air Handling Units	Certification
237313	Modular Indoor Central Station Air Handling Units	Operation / Maintenance Manual
237313	Modular Indoor Central Station Air Handling Units	Warranty
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	Product Data
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	Product Data
260533	Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems	Product Data
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	Product Data
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	Shop Drawings
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	Product Data
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	Operation / Maintenance Manual
262923	Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers	Shop Drawings
262923	Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers	Product Data
262923	Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers	Operation / Maintenance Manual
262923	Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers	Warranty

## SECTION 013513.19 – SITE SECURITY AND HEALTH REQUIREMENTS (DMH)

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general Institution rules.
- B. This Section includes requirements for infection control in environments that Clients are housed in, dine in, or participate in program activities in or adjacent to the Scope of Work area:
  - 1. The Contractor shall have the applicable measures specified below in-place any time demolition or construction activities occur in occupied or non-occupied project work areas.
  - 2. The Contractor shall complete all specified cleaning procedures and receive clearance from the Construction Representative prior to removing any barriers and other precautionary measures – even for areas that the Clients do not occupy during construction.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. List of required submittals:
  - 1. Materials Safety Data Sheets for all hazardous materials to be brought onsite.
  - 2. Schedule of proposed shutdowns, if applicable.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL RULES OF THE INSTITUTION

- A. All workers and supervisors employed by the Contractor or any Subcontractors shall be made aware that the buildings and grounds are part of a Department of Mental Health facility and that:
  - 1. The Residents or Patients are to be treated with dignity.
  - 2. Construction activities shall not interfere with normal facility operation, except as otherwise arranged with and approved by the Facility Authorities.
  - 3. Access to the Facility, Residents, and Staff by Emergency Responders shall not be compromised at any time.
  - 4. Fire exits, alarm systems, and sprinkler systems shall remain fully operational at all times unless written approval is received from the Construction Representative and the appropriate Facility Representative at least (24) hours in advance. The Contractor shall submit a written time schedule for any proposed shutdowns.

5. Smoking is not permitted in State-operated buildings. Smoking on grounds shall be in accordance with local Facility regulations and only as approved by Facility Management.
  6. Intoxicating beverages or narcotics shall not be brought upon the premises nor shall Contractor's personnel be under the influence of these substances while on the premises.
  7. Explosives or firearms and other weapons shall not be allowed onsite.
  8. Keys shall not be left in unattended vehicles. Vehicles shall be locked when not in use.
  9. The Residents shall not be photographed. Maintaining confidentiality of the Residents shall be required.
- B. Because of the persistent risk that Residents or Patients may cause harm to themselves or others, extreme caution and special care must be taken in the interest of safety.
1. Materials, tools, and construction apparatus including ropes, ladders, and flammable liquids shall not be left unattended during working hours and shall be securely stored during non-working hours. Secure storage includes lockable cabinets, rooms, trailers, and rigid fenced areas. The location and use of exterior storage areas shall be approved by the Construction Representative and Facility Management prior to their use.
  2. An inventory of tools, equipment, and materials intended to be left unsecured must be submitted to and approved by the Construction Representative in advance.
  3. Any missing tools, equipment, or material must be immediately reported to the Construction Representative and Facility Management. Unattended or unsecured tools, equipment, or material that poses a potential risk may be confiscated by Facility Staff and returned after completion of the appropriate request documents by the Contractor.
  4. Access to construction areas must be controlled at all times. Appropriate barriers must be erected to secure trenches, pits, wiring, etc.
  5. Material Safety Data Sheets, or their equivalent, shall be provided to the Construction Representative for all hazardous materials to be brought onsite at least a day before their delivery.
  6. Construction debris and trash must be securely stored in approved containers or removed from the site at least daily.
- C. If the safety of Residents or Staff is jeopardized because Safety Guidelines are not properly observed, the Facility Representative will notify the Construction Representative, who may stop the Work until the situation is resolved. In such case, the Work will resume only after the unsafe conditions have been corrected and the Contractor is notified by the Construction Representative to resume the Work.

### 3.2 ACCESS TO THE SITE

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Facility and Construction Representative to establish a schedule for working hours. Normal working hours for this Facility are 7:30AM to 4:00PM Monday through Friday. Working hour changes or overtime are to be requested and approved (48) hours in advance. The need for emergency overtime

shall be reported to the Construction Representative as soon as it is evident that overtime is needed.

- B. The Contractor shall provide the name and phone number of the individual who is in charge onsite and who can be contacted in case of an emergency. This individual must maintain a current list of names and addresses of all project construction personnel and to furnish this list to the Construction Representative or Facility Representative upon request.
- C. All construction personnel shall be identified to the Facility Representative and, when the Facility Representative feels it is necessary, they will be issued identification cards.

### 3.3 HEALTH AND TRAFFIC CONTROLS

- A. Take all reasonable and necessary measures to reduce air and water pollution by any material or equipment used during construction. Keep volatile wastes in approved covered containers. Do not dispose of volatile wastes or oils in storm or sanitary drains.
- B. Keep project area in a neat, clean, orderly, and safe condition at all times. Immediately remove all waste materials. Do not allow trash or rubbish to accumulate. Provide approved onsite containers for collection of trash and rubbish and dispose of it at frequent intervals during progression of the Work.
- C. No burning will be permitted on the grounds.
- D. Conduct all construction-related activities and management of debris to ensure minimum interference with roadways, streets, walks, utilities, and adjacent facilities.
- E. Do not obstruct streets, driveways, walks, or use facilities without permission from the Facility Representative.
- F. No driver shall exceed the Facility speed limit of 5mph.

### 3.4 SPECIFICATION OF REQUIRED INFECTION CONTROL PRECAUTIONS BY CLASS

Class I is for inspection and non-invasive type activities. These include, but are not limited to, the removal of ceiling tiles for visual inspection (1) tile per 50SqFt, painting without sanding, wall covering, electrical trim work, minor plumbing, and activities which do not generate dust or require cutting of walls or access to ceilings other than for visual inspection.

OR

Class II is for work that generates minimal to a high level of dust, requires demolition, or removal of any fixed building components or assemblies. Work of this type includes, but is not limited to, installation of telephone and computer cabling, access to chase spaces, cutting of walls or ceiling where dust migration can be controlled, sanding of walls for painting or wall covering, removal of floor coverings, ceiling tiles and casework, new wall construction, minor duct work, electrical or plumbing work above ceilings, and any activity that cannot be completed within a single work shift.

OR

Class III is for major demolition and construction projects. Work includes, but is not limited to, activities which require consecutive work shifts, heavy demolition, the removal of a complete cabling system, and new construction.

The Facility Contact or the DMH Capital Improvements Administrator will help you determine which Class applies to the particular project:

- A. Class I: Contractor shall perform the following precautionary measures during the project:
  - 1. Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations.
  - 2. Immediately replace a ceiling tile displaced for visual inspection.
- B. Class I: Contractor shall perform the following measures upon completion of the project:
  - 1. No work is required.

OR

- A. Class II: Contractor shall perform the following precautionary measures during the project:
  - 1. Provide active means to prevent airborne dust from dispersing into the atmosphere.
  - 2. Water mist work surfaces to control dust while cutting.
  - 3. Seal unused doors with duct tape.
  - 4. Block off and seal air vents.
  - 5. Place dust mat at entrance and exit of work area.
  - 6. Remove or isolate HVAC system in areas where work is being performed.
- B. Class II: Contractor shall perform the following measures upon completion of the project:
  - 1. Wipe work surfaces with disinfectant.
  - 2. Contain construction waste before transport in tightly covered containers.
  - 3. Wet mop and/or vacuum with HEPA filtered vacuum before leaving work area.
  - 4. Remove isolation of HVAC system in areas where work was performed.

OR

- A. Class III: Contractor shall perform the following precautionary measures during the project:
  - 1. Remove or isolate HVAC system in area where work is being done to prevent contamination of duct system including block off and seal air vents.
  - 2. Complete all critical barriers, i.e., drywall, plywood, and plastic to seal area from non-work area or implement control cube method (use cart with plastic covering and sealed connection to worksite with HEPA vacuum for vacuuming prior to exit) before construction begins.
  - 3. Maintain negative air pressure within worksite utilizing HEPA equipped air filtration units.



4. Place dust mat at entrance and exit of work area.
  5. Contain construction waste before transport in tightly covered containers.
  6. Cover transport receptacles or carts. Tape covering unless solid lid.
- B. Class III: Contractor shall perform the following measures upon completion of the project:
1. Do not remove barriers from work area until completed project is inspected by the Construction Representative and a Representative of the Facility's Safety and Inspection Control Section.
  2. Remove barrier materials carefully to minimize spreading of dirt and debris associated with construction.
  3. Vacuum work area with HEPA filtered vacuums.
  4. Wet mop area with disinfectant.
  5. Remove isolation of HVAC system in areas where work is being performed.

### 3.5 REQUIRED CRIMINAL BACKGROUND CHECK AND WANTS & WARRANTS

- C. Each employee of the General Contractor, of the Subcontractor(s), Supplier(s), and Testing Agencies that need to enter or access the construction site inside and/or outside, shall be required to have a Criminal Background check and Wants & Warrants check completed prior to accessing the construction site.
- D. The General Contractor shall be responsible for submitting the employee names to the Missouri State Highway Patrol and including payment of \$10.00 for each employee submission. The results will be submitted to the Division of Facilities Management, Design and Construction (FMDC).
- E. If an issue is discovered as part of the Criminal Background or Wants & Warrants checks that precludes any person from entering or accessing the construction site, the Department of Mental Health (DMH) shall be notified by FMDC. It shall be the discretion of DMH as to what person(s) will be prohibited from entering or accessing the construction site.

END OF SECTION 013513.19

# **SECTION 015000 – CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY CONTROLS**

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes requirements for construction facilities and temporary controls including temporary utilities, support facilities, security, and protection.
- B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Water service and distribution
  - 2. Temporary electric power and light
  - 3. Sanitary facilities, including drinking water
- C. Support facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Field offices and storage sheds
  - 2. Temporary project identification signs and bulletin boards
  - 3. Waste disposal services
  - 4. Rodent and pest control
  - 5. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities
- D. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, to following:
  - 1. Temporary fire protection
  - 2. Barricades, warning signs, and lights
  - 3. Environmental protection

### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Temporary Utilities: Submit reports of tests, inspections, meter readings, and similar procedures performed on temporary utilities.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within (15) days of the date established for commencement of the Work, submit a schedule indicating implementation and termination of each temporary utility.

### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulations: Comply with industry standards and applicable laws and regulations including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Building code requirements
  - 2. Health and safety regulations
  - 3. Utility company regulations

4. Environmental protection regulations
  - B. Standards: Comply with NFPA 241 “Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations”. ANSI A10 Series standards for “Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition”, and NECA Electrical Design Library “Temporary Electrical Facilities”.
    1. Electrical Service: Comply with NEMA, NECA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service in compliance with NFPA 70 “National Electric Code”.
  - C. Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to inspect and test each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

## **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Temporary Utilities: Prepare a schedule indicating dates for implementation and termination of each temporary utility. At the earliest feasible time, when acceptable to the Owner, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.
- B. Conditions of Use: Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in a safe and efficient manner. Relocate temporary services and facilities as the Work progresses. Do not overload facilities or permit them to interfere with progress. Take necessary fire-prevention measures. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist onsite.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide new materials. If acceptable to the Designer, the Contractor may use undamaged, previously used materials in serviceable condition. Provide materials suitable for use intended.
- B. Lumber and Plywood:
  1. For signs and directory boards, provide exterior-type, Grade B-B high-density concrete form overlay plywood of sized and thicknesses indicated.
  2. For fences and vision barriers, provide minimum 3/9” (9.5mm) thick exterior plywood.
  3. For safety barriers, sidewalk bridges, and similar uses, provide minimum 5/8” (16mm) thick exterior plywood.
- C. Paint: Comply with requirements of Division 9 Section “Painting”.
  1. For sign panels and applying graphics, provide exterior-grade alkyd gloss enamel over exterior primer.
- D. Tarpaulins: Provide waterproof, fire-resistant, UL-labeled tarpaulins with flame-spread rating of (15) or less. For temporary enclosures, provide translucent, nylon-reinforced laminated polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride, fire-retardant tarpaulins.
- E. Water: Provide potable water approved by local health authorities.

- F. Open-Mesh Fencing: Provide 0.120" (3mm) thick, galvanized 2" (50mm) chainlink fabric fencing 6' (2m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts, 1½" (38mm) ID for line posts and 2½" (64mm) ID for corner posts.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. General: Provide new equipment. If acceptable to the Designer, the Contractor may use undamaged, previously used equipment in serviceable condition. Provide equipment suitable for use intended.
- B. Water Hoses: Provide ¾" (19mm), heavy-duty, abrasion-resistant, flexible rubber hoses 100' (30m) long, with pressure rating greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system. Provide adjustable shutoff nozzles at hose discharge.
- C. Electrical Outlets: Provide properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets to prevent insertion of 110 to 120V plugs into higher voltage outlets. Provide receptacle outlets equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupters, reset button, and pilot light for connection of power tools and equipment.
- D. Electrical Power Cords: Provide grounded extension cords. Use hard-service cords where exposed to abrasion and traffic. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords if single lengths will not reach areas where construction activities are in progress. Do not exceed safe length-voltage rating.
- E. Lamps and Light Fixtures: Provide general service incandescent lamps of wattage required for adequate illumination. Provide guard cages or tempered-glass enclosures where exposed to breakage. Provide exterior fixture where exposed to moisture.
- F. Heating Units: Provide temporary heating units that have been tested and labeled by UL, FM, or another recognized trade association related to the type of fuel being consumed.
- G. Temporary Offices: Provide prefabricated or mobile units or similar job-built construction with lockable entrances, operable windows, and serviceable finishes. Provide heated and air-conditioned units on foundations adequate for normal loading.
- H. Temporary Toilet Units: Provide self-contained, single-occupant toilet units of the chemical, aerated re-circulation, or combustion type. Provide units properly vented and fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.
- I. Fire Extinguishers: Provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class A fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces. In other locations, provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class ABC, dry-chemical extinguishers, or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for the exposures.
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 10 and NFPA 241 for classification, extinguishing agent, and size required by location and class of fire exposure.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Use qualified personnel for installation of temporary facilities. Locate facilities where they will serve the Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.
- B. Provide each Facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### **3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Engage the appropriate local utility company to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where company provides only part of the service, provide the remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with company recommendations.
  - 1. Arrange with company and existing users for a time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  - 2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction. Prior to temporary utility availability, provide trucked-in services.
  - 3. Obtain easements to bring temporary utilities to the site where the Owner's easements cannot be used for that purpose.
  - 4. Use Charges: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to the Owner or Designer. Neither the Owner nor Designer will accept cost or use charges as a basis of claims for Change Order.
- B. Temporary Water Service: The Owner will provide water for construction purposes from the existing building system. All required temporary extensions shall be provided and removed by the Contractor. Connection points and methods of connection shall be designated and approved by the Construction Representative.
- C. Temporary Electric Power Service: Provide weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics during construction period. Include meters, transformers, overload-protected disconnects, automatic ground-fault interrupters, and main distribution switch gear.
  - 1. Install electric power service underground, except where overhead service must be used.
  - 2. Power Distribution System: Install wiring overhead and rise vertically where least exposed to damage. Where permitted, wiring circuits not exceeding 125V, AC 20ampere rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable where overhead and exposed for surveillance.
- D. Temporary Lighting: When overhead floor or roof deck has been installed, provide temporary lighting with local switching.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that will fulfill security and protection requirements without operating the entire system. Provide temporary lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations and traffic conditions.

- E. Temporary Heating: Provide temporary heat required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protection of installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select safe equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce the ambient condition required and minimize consumption of energy.
  - 1. Heating Facilities: Except where the Owner authorizes use of the permanent system, provide vented, self-contained, LP gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 2. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open flame, or salamander heating units is prohibited.
- F. Temporary Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Use of pit-type privies will not be permitted. Comply with regulations and health codes for the type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities. Install where facilities will best serve the Project's needs.
  - 1. Shield toilets to ensure privacy.
  - 2. Provide separate facilities for male and female personnel.
  - 3. Provide toilet tissue materials for each facility.
- G. Wash Facilities: Install wash facilities supplied with potable water at convenient locations for personnel involved in handling materials that require wash-up for a health and sanitary condition. Dispose of drainage properly. Supply cleaning compounds appropriate for each condition.
  - 1. Provide paper towels or similar disposable materials for each facility.
  - 2. Provide covered waste containers for used material.
  - 3. Provide safety showers, eyewash fountains, and similar facilities for convenience, safety, and sanitation of personnel.
- H. Drinking-Water Facilities: Provide containerized, tap-dispenser, bottled-water drinking-water units, including paper supply.
  - 1. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45°F to 55°F (7°C to 13°C).

### **3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Locate field offices, storage sheds, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.
  - 1. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove prior to Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.
- B. Field Offices: Provide insulated, weathertight temporary offices of sufficient size to accommodate required office personnel at the Project site. Keep the office clean and orderly for use for small progress meetings. Furnish and equip office as follows:
  - 1. Furnish with a desk and chairs, a 4-drawer file cabinet, plan table, plan rack, and a 6-shelf bookcase.

2. Equip with a water cooler and private toilet complete with water closet, lavatory, and medicine cabinet unit with a mirror.
- C. Storage Facilities: Limited areas for storage of building materials are available onsite. Available storage areas are shown on the drawings. The Contractor shall provide his own security. Specific locations for storage and craning operations will be discussed at the Pre-Bid Meeting and the Pre-Construction Meeting.
  - D. Construction Parking: Parking at the site will be provided in the areas designated at the Pre-Construction Meeting.
  - E. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities.
    1. Where heat is needed and the permanent building enclosure is not complete, provide temporary enclosures where there is no other provision for containment of heat. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and materials drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.
    2. Install tarpaulins securely with incombustible wood framing and other materials. Close openings of 25SqFt (2.3SqM) or less with plywood or similar materials.
    3. Close openings through floor or roof decks and horizontal surfaces with load-bearing, wood-framed construction.
  - F. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Prepare project identification and other signs of size indicated. Install signs where indicated to inform the public and persons seeking entrance to the Project. Support on posts or framing of preservative-treated wood or steel. Do not permit installation of unauthorized signs.
    1. Project Identification Signs: Engage an experienced sign painter to apply graphics. Comply with details indicated.
    2. Temporary Signs: Prepare signs to provide directional information to construction personnel and visitors.
  - G. Collection and Disposal of Waste: Collect waste from construction areas and elsewhere daily. Comply with requirements of NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste material and debris. Enforce requirements strictly. Do not hold materials more than seven (7) days during normal weather or three (3) days when the temperature is expected to rise above 80°F (27°C). Handle hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste by containerizing properly. Dispose of material lawfully.

### **3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with standards and code requirements for erection of structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and the public of the hazard being protected against. Where appropriate and needed, provide lighting including flashing red or amber lights.
- B. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure of partially completed areas of construction. Provide locking entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.

1. Storage: Where materials and equipment must be stored and are of value or attractive for theft, provide a secure lockup. Enforce discipline in connection with the installation and release of material to minimize the opportunity for theft and vandalism.
- C. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and minimize the possibility that air, waterways, and subsoil might be contaminated or polluted or that other undesirable effects might result. Avoid use of tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noisemaking tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near the site.

### **3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION AND REMOVAL**

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. Limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses to minimize waste and abuse.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage by freezing temperatures and similar elements.
  1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
  2. Protection: Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.
- C. Termination and Removal: Unless the Designer requests that it be maintained longer, remove each temporary facility when the need has ended, when replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with the temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the Contractor's property. The Owner reserves the right to take possession of project identification signs.
  2. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during the construction period including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Replace air filters and clean inside of ductwork and housing.
    - b. Replace significantly worn parts and parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
    - c. Replace lamps burned out or noticeably dimmed by hours of use.

**END OF SECTION 015000**



## SECTION 017400 – CLEANING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions, Bid Form, and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for cleaning during the Project.
- B. Environmental Requirements: Conduct cleaning and waste-disposal operations in compliance with local laws and ordinances. Comply fully with federal and local environmental and anti-pollution regulations.
  - 1. Do not dispose of volatile wastes such as mineral spirits, oil, or paint thinner in storm or sanitary drains.
  - 2. Burning or burying of debris, rubbish, or other waste material on the premises is not permitted.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by the manufacturer or fabricator for the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General
  - 1. Retain all stored items in an orderly arrangement allowing maximum access, not impeding drainage or traffic, and providing the required protection of materials.
  - 2. Do not allow the accumulation of scrap, debris, waste material, and other items not required for construction of this Work.
  - 3. At least twice each month, and more often if necessary, completely remove all scrap, debris, and waste material from the jobsite.
  - 4. Provide adequate storage for all items awaiting removal from the jobsite, observing all requirements for fire protection and protection of the ecology.
- B. Site
  - 1. Daily, inspect the site and pick up all scrap, debris, and waste material. Remove all such items to the place designated for their storage.
  - 2. Weekly, inspect all arrangements of materials stored onsite. Re-stack, tidy, or otherwise service all material arrangements.

3. Maintain the site in a neat and orderly condition at all times.

C. Structures

1. Daily, inspect the structures and pick up all scrap, debris, and waste material. Remove all such items to the place designated for their storage.
2. Weekly, sweep all interior spaces clean. "Clean" for the purposes of this paragraph, shall be interpreted as meaning free from dust and other material capable of being removed by use of reasonable effort and handheld broom.
3. In preparation for installation of succeeding materials, clean the structures or pertinent portions thereof to the degree of cleanliness recommended by the manufacturer of the succeeding material, using all equipment and materials required to achieve the required cleanliness.
4. Following the installation of finish floor materials, clean the finish floor daily while work is being performed in the space in which finish materials have been installed. "Clean" for the purposes of this subparagraph, shall be interpreted as meaning free from all foreign material which, in the opinion of the Construction Representative, may be injurious to the finish of the finish floor material.

### 3.2 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Provide final cleaning operations when indicated. Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit of Work to the condition expected from a commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for the entire Project or a portion of the Project.
  1. Clean the Project Site, yard and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and foreign substances.
  2. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  3. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  4. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from the site.
  5. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  6. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  7. Broom clean concrete floors in unoccupied spaces.
  8. Vacuum clean carpet and similar soft surfaces removing debris and excess nap. Shampoo, if required.
  9. Clean transparent material, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other substances that are noticeable vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged

transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.

10. Remove labels that are not permanent labels.
  11. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over “UL” and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  12. Leave the Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Removal of Protection: Remove temporary protection and facilities installed during construction to protect previously completed installations during the remainder of the construction period.
- D. Compliances: Comply with governing regulations and safety standards for cleaning operations. Remove waste materials from the site and dispose of lawfully.
1. Where extra materials of value remain after Final Acceptance by the Owner, they become the Owner’s property.

END OF SECTION 017400

## **SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
- B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of videographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Construction Manager.
    - e. Name of Contractor.
    - f. Date of video recording.
  - 2. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use in PDF electronic file format on compact disc.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Coordination". Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

## **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM**

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.

- d. Regulatory requirements.
  - e. Equipment function.
  - f. Operating characteristics.
  - g. Limiting conditions.
  - h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
- a. Emergency manuals.
  - b. Operations manuals.
  - c. Maintenance manuals.
  - d. Project record documents.
  - e. Identification systems.
  - f. Warranties and bonds.
  - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
- a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
- a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.

- b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 007213 "General Conditions".
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### **3.2 INSTRUCTION**

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engineer will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

- D. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to format file type acceptable to Owner, on electronic media.
  - 1. Electronic Media: Read-only format compact disc acceptable to Owner, with commercial-grade graphic label.
  - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to project manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
  - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
  - 4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:
    - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
    - b. Business address.
    - c. Business phone number.
    - d. Point of contact.
    - e. E-mail address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
  - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
    - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
    - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
  - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.



- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

**END OF SECTION 017900**

## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of HVAC Equipment, Piping, and Plumbing equipment as identified on the plans. All salvaged equipment, piping, insulation, and refrigerant shall be removed and legally disposed of by the Contractor.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property-

- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's representative on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
- D. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.
- E. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will not occupy the building during construction. Buildings of the campus in the vicinity will be occupied during selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Owner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. HAZARDOUS MATERIALS
  - 1. If suspected hazardous materials not already identified are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Owner.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting removal of HVAC equipment and related demolition.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting HVAC removal, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by the Contractor.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.

3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
- B. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least two hours after flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  6. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Owner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Existing Pump P-1 to be provided to owner.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
  - 2. Testing Agency Qualifications: The Contractor shall retain the services of An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated. The Contractor shall be required to notify the Owner's representative a minimum of 48 hours prior to all placement of concrete.

#### 1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301.
  - 2. ACI 117.

## 2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

## 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I gray.
  - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C not to exceed 15%
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, graded.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size 1 inch nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- E. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.



- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- F. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

## 2.6 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Normal-Weight Concrete:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4500 psi -at 28 days.
  2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45-
  3. Slump Limit: 4 inches plus or minus 1 inch-
  4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

## 2.8 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, and furnish batch ticket information.
  1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F , reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exterior exposed concrete.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

### 3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

### 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

### 3.5 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
  2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
  3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.

### 3.7 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Engineer. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Engineer's approval.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each concrete mixture placed each day.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days, three specimens at 28 days and keep one specimen as a hold cylinder to be tested as required at the direction of the Engineer.
    - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strengths from at least three 4 by 8 in. cylinders made from the same sample of concrete and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every arithmetic average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 033000

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

#### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  - 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  - 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
  - 3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
  - 4. Ratings in "L-Rating" Subparagraph below indicate resistance to air leakage.
  - 5. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.025 cu. m/s per sq. m) of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm (0.024-cu. m/s) cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- D. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- E. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- D. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes sealants as necessary for installation of HVAC and plumbing equipment and related penetrations:
  - 1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 3. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
  - 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C 1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with substrates.
  - 4. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 5. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.



6. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
7. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Owner from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

## 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

## 2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

## 2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.
- ### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS
- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
  - B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
  - C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
    1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
    2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
    3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
  - D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 1. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - 2. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- 
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints between metal panels.
    - b. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, louvers and ducts.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Non Staining Silicone
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and windows.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.

END OF SECTION 079200

## SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates damaged as a result of renovation and HVAC, plumbing equipment replacement.
  - 1. Steel and iron.
  - 2. Galvanized metal.
  - 3. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
  - 4. Wood.
  - 5. Concrete.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Owner will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
  - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
    - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Owner at no added cost to Owner.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Colors: As Selected by Owner from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.



- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- G. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- H. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.

4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

I. CMU Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean surfaces.
2. Prime edges, ends, faces.
3. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with concrete filler.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.

1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel and Iron Substrates:
  - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.1D:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI 79.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #8.
  - 2. Aluminum Paint System MPI EXT 5.1K:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint, MPI #1.
- B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.3B:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, cementitious, MPI #26.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 5, or match existing conditions as required).MPI #94
- C. Aluminum Substrates:
  - 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.4A:

- a. Pretreatment Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
  - b. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 5 or match existing conditions as required), MPI #8.
- D. Wood Substrates: Wood trim, Architectural woodwork, Doors, Windows, Wood board siding
- 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.3L:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #10.
- E. Wood Substrates: Wood-based panel products.
- 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.4K:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #10.
- F. CMU and Concrete: panel products.
- 1. Latex System MPI EXT 4.2A:
    - a. Prime Coat: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #10.

END OF SECTION 099113

## SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates damaged as a result of renovation and HVAC replacement.
  - 1. Wood.
  - 2. Gypsum board.
  - 3. Plaster.
  - 4. CMU and Concrete.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements provide product listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

#### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior paints and coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base:
1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
- D. Colors: Match existing colors as approved by Owner.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Wood: 15 percent.
  2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
  3. Plaster: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.

- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.



- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates: Wood trim, Architectural woodwork, Doors.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI INT 6.3T:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #53.

B. Gypsum Board and Plaster Substrates:

1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
  - b. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1, or match existing conditions as required), MPI #53.

C. CMU/Concrete Substrates:

1. Latex System MPI INT 4.2A:
  - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.

END OF SECTION 099123

## SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Sleeves.
  - 5. Escutcheons.
  - 6. Grout.
  - 7. HVAC demolition.
  - 8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 9. Concrete bases.
  - 10. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

### 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).

- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

#### 2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### 2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.7 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials
- P. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- Q. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.



- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402, for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use minimum 4500 psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be minimum of 6x6 -W1.4 x W1.4 WWF (welded wire fabric) placed in pad.

### 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.8 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

### 3.9 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Clean equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.
- B. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

END OF SECTION 230500

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Manufacturers standard or Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

#### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

#### 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.

- 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - 2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 3. Thermowells.
  - 4. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 5. Gage attachments.
  - 6. Pitot-tube flowmeters.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle and rigid, bottom, with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.

- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
  - 6. Window: Glass.
  - 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.3 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

## 2.4 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
  - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
  - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CSA.
  - 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
  - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
  - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
  - 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.



- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.5 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  2. Case: Liquid-filled, Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter.
  3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
  7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  8. Window: Glass.
  9. Ring: Metal.
  10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.6 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.7 FLOWMETERS – TYPE FIT (FLOW INDICATING TRANSMITTER)

- A. Pitot-Tube Flowmeters:
  1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator. Connection to BAS System.
  2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  3. Sensor: Insertion type; for inserting probe into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
    - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for water.
    - b. Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
    - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
  4. Indicator: Meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
  5. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.
  6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 3 percent.
  7. Display: Shows rate of flow in gallons per minute.
  8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install flow indicators and meters in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- K. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- M. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- O. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- P. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
  - 2. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
  - 4. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- Q. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic boiler shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each chiller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C).
- B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C).
- C. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C).

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa).
- B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa).

### 3.7 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water/Heating-Hot Water Piping: Pitot-tube type.

B. Flowmeter for Cold Water makeup water piping: Turbine type.

END OF SECTION 230519

## SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Bronze swing check valves.
4. Iron swing check valves.
5. Bronze gate valves.
6. Iron gate valves.
7. Bronze globe valves.
8. Iron globe valves.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ##### A. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- ##### A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- ##### B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- ##### C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- ##### D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller[ except plug valves].

- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
  
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

## 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Brass.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.

## 2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

### B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

## 2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

### B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Composition.
  - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
  - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.

- i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.6 BRONZE GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.7 IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.8 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

#### 1. Description:



- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.9 IRON GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.10 CHAINWHEELS

### A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

- 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
- 2. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.
- 3. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install swing check valves for proper direction of flow and in horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, or gate valves.
  - 2. Throttling Service, Globe or ball valves.
  - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

### 3.5 HEATING HOT WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150 disc.
  3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim.
  4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 bronze disc.
  5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, RS, bronze.
  6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
  2. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 OS&Y.
  3. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 230523

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  4. Fastener systems.
  5. Equipment supports.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold/Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

L. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" or Section 099123 "Interior Painting".
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.



- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  - 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.

2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
  8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

Replace HVAC and Boiler Multiple Assets

H2305-01

HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING  
AND EQUIPMENT

230513 - 8

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Equipment labels.
  2. Warning signs and labels.
  3. Pipe labels.
  4. Duct labels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Letter Color: Black.
  3. Background Color: White.
  4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
  5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's designation per Mechanical Schedule.
- C. Nowhere in these plans and specifications are handwritten permanent markers approved for labels on equipment.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section

number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Color Coding shall be per ANSI/ASME A13.1.

- B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule: per ANSI/ASME A13.1
1. Heating Hot Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Green.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  2. Refrigerant Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Yellow.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.
  3. Natural Gas Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Yellow.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated or self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
    - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
  - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.



- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Owner and Engineer.
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- J. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

- K. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- L. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- M. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Insulation Specifications.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

- a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  - 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  - 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
- 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
- 1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
- 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  - 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  - 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure

- for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
  5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
    - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.

- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
  - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
  - 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
  - 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
  - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
  - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
  - 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
  - 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
  - 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
  - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for

differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

- a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Engineer and Owner, and comply with requirements in Section 232123 "Hydronic Pumps."
  2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
    - a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
  3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
  4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
  1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
  1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
  2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
  3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
- H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.
- J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Efficiency rating.
  - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
  - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
  - 1. Nameplate data.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
  - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.



- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Air pressure drop.
  - 4. Inlet steam pressure.
  
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Airflow.
  - 4. Air pressure drop.
  - 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### 3.13 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

### 3.14 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

### 3.15 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.

5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Engineer's name and address.
6. Contractor's name and address.
7. Report date.
8. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
9. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
10. Summary of contents including the following:
  - a. Indicated versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
11. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
12. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
  - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
  - b. Conditions of filters.
  - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
  - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
  - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
  - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
  - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
  - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 230700 - HVAC INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:
  - a. Cellular glass.
  - b. Flexible elastomeric.
  - c. Mineral fiber.
  - d. Polyolefin.
2. Fire-rated insulation systems.
3. Insulating cements.
4. Adhesives.
5. Mastics.
6. Sealants.
7. Factory-applied jackets.
8. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
9. Field-applied jackets.
10. Tapes.
11. Securements.
12. Corner angles.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ##### A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label

insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with

factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 1-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.5 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
  - 3. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
  - 4. Color: White or gray.
  - 5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Aluminum.
  - 5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  2. Color: White.
  3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps.
- C. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
1. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  2. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  3. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.

- c. Tee covers.
- d. Flange and union covers.
- e. End caps.
- f. Beveled collars.
- g. Valve covers.
- h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
  
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
  
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
  
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.



## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing or closed seal.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - 2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
    - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - 3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  - 4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

- 5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy.

## 2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).

D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe

- insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.5 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.

2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

E. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.



- e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
  5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

### 3.8 POLYOLEFIN INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

E. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

F. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### 3.10 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.11 FINISHES

- A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
  2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
  3. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.13 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL. (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

- A. Duct Liner is not authorized for new duct installations.
- B. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in nonconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in nonconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
- C. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 3. Flexible connectors.
  - 4. Vibration-control devices.
  - 5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.14 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

Note: Supply and Return Ductwork inside Mechanical Room is considered "Concealed" Space.

- A. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- B. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- C. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- D. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.15 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
- C. Water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Heating air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm)] Insert thickness thick.

3.16 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.17 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

A. Heating Service, 40 to 200 Deg F (5 to 93 Deg C): Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1 ½" minimum insulation for piping less than 1 ½" size, 2" thick insulation for piping 1 ½" and greater.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 ½" minimum insulation for piping less than 1 ½" size, 2" thick insulation for piping 1 ½" and greater.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping: Flexible elastomeric or Mineral-fiber, preformed pipe insulation, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Flexible elastomeric or Polyolefin, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.18 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE (See 3.19 and 3.20 for Jacket Schedule)

A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
4. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

### 3.19 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm)
- E. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
- F. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
  - 1. Aluminum, Smooth 0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] thick.
- G. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- H. Piping, Exposed (Includes Mechanical Rooms):
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils (0.5mm) thick.

### 3.20 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Minimum 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230700

## SECTION 230923 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The scope of work for this project is to provide new a new Controls Software System for the HVAC Equipment and Systems at the Riverbend Treatment Center. Specific existing controls hardware shall also be removed and replaced with new systems and equipment as indicated on design drawings.
- B. Compatibility with Existing Systems.
  - 1. The existing system is a Johnson Controls system. The new controls software system shall be compatible with existing hardware and systems but shall not be limited to Johnson Controls.
  - 2. Other acceptable manufacturers include Automated Logic, Allerton or Snyder Controls.
- C. Section Includes:
  - 1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
  - 2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for control sequences in DDC systems. Control systems narratives on Design drawings.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
  - 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
  - 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
  - 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.

4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
  5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- L. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- M. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- N. LAN: Local area network.
- O. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- P. LON Specific Definitions:
1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
  2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.



3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
  4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
  5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
  6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
  7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
  8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
  9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.
  10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
  11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
  12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.
  13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
  14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
  15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- Q. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- R. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- S. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- T. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- U. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.

- V. PDA: Personal digital assistant.
- W. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- X. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- Y. RAM: Random access memory.
- Z. RF: Radio frequency.
- AA. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- BB. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.
- CC. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- DD. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- EE. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.
- FF. VAV: Variable air volume.
- GG. WLED: White light emitting diode.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:
  1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
  5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
    - a. Operator workstations.
    - b. Servers.
    - c. Printers.

- d. Gateways.
  - e. Routers.
  - f. Protocol analyzers.
  - g. DDC controllers.
  - h. Enclosures.
  - i. Electrical power devices.
  - j. UPS units.
  - k. Accessories.
  - l. Instruments.
  - m. Control dampers and actuators.
  - n. Control valves and actuators.
6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
  7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

B. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughout.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Plan Drawings indicating the following:

- a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
  - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
  - c. Each desktop operator workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.
  - d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
  - e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
  - f. Information, drawn to scale.
  - g. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
4. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
- a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
  - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
  - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
  - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
  - e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
  - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
  - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
  - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
  - i. Link to a PDF of the Sequence of Operations.
5. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
- a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
  - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
  - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
  - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
6. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
  - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
  - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or fiber-optic cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
  - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.

7. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
  - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
  
8. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
  - a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
  - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
  - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
  - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
  
9. Color graphics indicating the following:
  - a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
  - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
  - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.

D. System Description:

1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.
3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Loss of power.
  - b. Loss of network communication signal.
  - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outputs.
  - d. Operator workstation failure.
  - e. Gateway failure.
  - f. Network failure
  - g. Controller failure.
  - h. Instrument failure.
  - i. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
6. Description of Owner training.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates:
  - 1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product that requires testing to be performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
    - b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
    - c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
    - d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
    - e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
    - f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
    - g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
      - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
      - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
      - 3) Debug hardware problems.
      - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
    - h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
    - i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
    - j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.

- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over four - year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
  - 2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
    - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
  - 3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within 16 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
  - 4. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. For Gateway: Two-year parts and labor warranty for each.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
  - 1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be Web based or Web compatible.
  - 1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:
    - a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
    - b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
    - c. Web access shall be password protected.
  - 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:
    - a. Operator workstation and or server shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
    - b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
    - c. Web access shall be password protected.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.
  - 1. System Performance Objectives:
    - a. DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
    - b. DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
    - c. DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
    - d. DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
    - e. DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.



1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. DDC System Speed:
1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
    - a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
    - b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
    - c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
    - d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
  2. Display of Connected I/O:
    - a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
    - b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
    - c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 30 seconds of activation or change of state.
    - d. Graphic display refresh shall update within eight seconds.
    - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.
- D. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- E. DDC System Data Storage:
1. Include server(s) with disk drive data storage to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
  2. When logged onto a server, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
  3. Server(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.
  4. Server(s) shall use IT industry-standard database platforms such as Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Data Engine (MSDE).

F. Future Expandability:

1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least two times total I/O points indicated.
2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.

G. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.

1. Energy:

- a. Thermal: Within 5 percent of reading.
- b. Electric Power: Within 1 percent of reading.
- c. Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied by utility.

2. Flow:

- a. Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- b. Water: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.

3. Moisture (Relative Humidity):

- a. Air: Within 5 percent RH.
- b. Space: Within 5 percent RH.
- c. Outdoor: Within 5 percent RH.

4. Level: Within 5 percent of reading.

5. Pressure:

- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: 1 percent of instrument range.
- b. Space: Within 1 percent of instrument range.
- c. Water: Within 1 percent of instrument range.

6. Speed: Within 5 percent of reading.

7. Temperature, Dew Point:

- a. Air: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
- b. Space: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
- c. Outdoor: Within 3 deg F (1.5 deg C).

8. Temperature, Dry Bulb:

- a. Air: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
- b. Space: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
- c. Outdoor: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
- d. Chilled Water/Heating Hot Water: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).

- e. Other Temperatures Not Indicated: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
9. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
- a. Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
10. Vibration: Within 5 percent of reading.
- H. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have following precision:
- 1. Current:
    - a. Milliamperes: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
    - b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and more.
  - 2. Energy:
    - a. Electric Power:
      - 1) Rate (Watts): Nearest 1/10th of a watt through 1000 W.
      - 2) Rate (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest kilowatt above 1000 kW.
      - 3) Usage (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000 kW.
    - b. Thermal, Rate:
      - 1) Heating: For Btu/h, nearest Btu/h up to 1000 Btu/h; nearest 10 Btu/h between 1000 and 10,000 Btu/h; nearest 100 Btu/h for above 10,000 Btu/h. For Mbh, round to nearest Mbh up to 1000 Mbh; nearest 10 Mbh between 1000 and 10,000 Mbh; nearest 100 Mbh above 10,000 Mbh (For watts, nearest watt up to 1000 W; for kilowatts, round to nearest kilowatt up to 1000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 1000 and 10,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 10,000 kW).
      - 2) Cooling: For tons, nearest ton up to 1000 tons; nearest 10 tons between 1000 and 10,000 tons; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons
    - c. Thermal, Usage:
      - 1) Heating: For Btu, nearest Btu up to 1000 Btu; nearest 10 Btu between 1000 and 10,000 Btu; nearest 100 Btu for above 10,000 Btu. For Mbtu, round to nearest Mbtu up to 1000 Mbtu; nearest 10 Mbtu between 1000 and 10,000 Mbtu; nearest 100 Mbtu above 10,000 Mbtu
      - 2) Cooling: For ton-hours, nearest ton-hours up to 1000 tons-hours; nearest 10 ton-hours between 1000 and 10,000 ton-hours; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons.
  - 3. Flow:

- a. Air: Nearest 1/10th of a cfm through 100 cfm; nearest cfm between 100 and 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm; nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
  - b. Water: Nearest 1/10th gpm through 100 gpm; nearest gpm between 100 and 1000 gpm; nearest 10 gpm between 1000 and 10,000 gpm; nearest 100 gpm above 10,000 gpm.
- 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
  - a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
- 5. Level: Nearest 1/100th of an inch through 10 inches, nearest 1/10 of an inch between 10 and 100 inches, nearest inch above 100 inches
- 6. Speed:
  - a. Rotation (rpm): Nearest 1 rpm.
  - b. Velocity: Nearest 1/10th fpm through 100 fpm; nearest fpm between 100 and 1000 fpm; nearest 10 fpm above 1000 fpm.
- 7. Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
- 8. Pressure:
  - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th in. w.c.
  - b. Space: Nearest 1/100th in. w.c..
  - c. Steam: Nearest 1/10th psig through 100 psig, nearest psig above 100 psig.
  - d. Water: Nearest 1/10 psig through 100 psig, nearest psig above 100 psig.
- 9. Temperature:
  - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
  - c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - d. Chilled Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - e. Condenser Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - f. Heating Hot Water: Nearest degree.
  - g. Heat Recovery Runaround: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - h. Steam: Nearest degree.
- 10. Vibration: Nearest 1/10th in/s.
- 11. Voltage: Nearest 1/10 volt up to 100 V; nearest volt above 100 V.
- I. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
  - 1. Flow:
    - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
    - b. Water: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.
  - 2. Moisture (Relative Humidity):

- a. Air: Within 5 percent RH.
  - b. Space: Within 5 percent RH.
  - c. Outdoor: Within 5 percent RH.
3. Level: Within 5 percent of reading.
  4. Pressure:
    - a. Within 1 percent of instrument range.
  5. Temperature, Dew Point:
    - a. Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
  6. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
    - a. Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
  7. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
    - a. Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).

J. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:

1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
  - a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.
2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 2.
  - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4.
  - c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - e. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
  - f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 12.
    - 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 2.
  - g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: Type 4.

K. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:

1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
  - a. If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

L. Electric Power Quality:

1. Power-Line Surges:
  - a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
  - b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
2. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

M. Backup Power Source:

1. HVAC systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated DDC system products that control such systems and equipment also served from a backup power source.

N. UPS:

1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
  - a. Servers.
  - b. Gateways.
  - c. DDC controllers.

## 2.4 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. System architecture shall consist of no more than three levels of LANs.

1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
2. Level two LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
3. Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.

B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:

1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: 100 Mbps.

C. DDC system shall consist of dedicated LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.

- D. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than two times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- E. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- F. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- G. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.

## 2.5 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Desktop and portable operator workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  - 2. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
  - 3. Remote connection using outside of system personal computer or PDA through Web access.
- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable operator workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
  - 1. Each mechanical equipment room.
  - 2. Each boiler room.
  - 3. Fire-alarm system command center.
- D. Desktop Workstations:
  - 1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  - 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
  - 3. Able to communicate, with modems, remotely with any device connected to any DDC system LAN.
  - 4. Communication via a modem shall not interfere with LAN activity and LAN activity shall not prevent workstation from handling incoming calls.
- E. Portable Workstations:
  - 1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  - 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
  - 3. Connect to DDC system LAN through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.

4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
5. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
6. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.
7. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.

F. POT:

1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected.

G. Critical Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message, and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.

H. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to 20 simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

## 2.6 NETWORKS

A. Acceptable networks for connecting operator workstations and network controllers include the following:

1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
2. CEA-709.1-C.
3. IP.
4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.

## 2.7 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to public and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

B. Industry Standard Protocols:

1. DDC system shall use any one or a combination of the following industry standard protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system requirements indicated:
  - a. ASHRAE 135.
  - b. CEA-709.1-C.
  - c. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.



2. Gateways shall be used to connect networks and network devices using different protocols.

## 2.8 DESKTOP OPERATOR WORKSTATIONS

- A. The DDC System shall be installed and accessed through the existing computer systems used by the Maintenance Staff located in the Maintenance Shop. Coordinate with Owner for specific computer system for installation at the Facility.

## 2.9 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

### A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 64 bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple-network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

### B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
6. Security Access:
  - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.
  - b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
  - c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.
  - d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface means is used.

- e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
  - f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is capable of performing.
  - g. Software shall have at least five access levels.
  - h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
  - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.
7. Data Segregation:
- a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
  - b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
  - c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
  - d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
  - e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
  - f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Start or stop selected equipment.
  - b. Adjust set points.
  - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
  - d. Enable and disable process execution.
  - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
  - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
  - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
  - h. Override control loop set points.
  - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
  - j. Define holiday schedules.
  - k. Change time and date.
  - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
  - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
  - n. View limits.
  - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
  - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
  - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
9. Reporting:
- a. Generated automatically and manually.
  - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.

c. Types of Reporting:

- 1) General listing of points.
  - 2) List points currently in alarm.
  - 3) List of off-line points.
  - 4) List points currently in override status.
  - 5) List of disabled points.
  - 6) List points currently locked out.
  - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
  - 8) List weekly schedules.
  - 9) List holiday programming.
  - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.

16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.
19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.
  - a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
  - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
  - c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
21. Help Features:
  - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
  - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
    - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
  - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
    - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
  - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols similar to those indicated.
  - b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
    - 1) Define background screens.
    - 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
    - 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
    - 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
    - 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.

- D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
  2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
    - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
    - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
    - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
  3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation and control logic diagram].
    - a. Chilled-water system.
    - b. Heating hot-water system.
    - c. Air-handling system and unit.
    - d. Fan.
    - e. Pump.
    - f. Water Heater.
  4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
  5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers, gateways operator workstations and other network devices.
- E. Customizing Software:
1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
  2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
  3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
    - a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
    - b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of print-out of operator changes.
    - c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.

- d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time and trouble condition.
  - e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time schedules.
  - f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
    - 1) System and point enable and disable.
    - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
    - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
    - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
  - g. Application program change capability shall include the following:
    - 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
    - 2) Programming changes.
    - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive and disk for archived record.
  5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
  6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum, the following:
    - a. Proportional control (P).
    - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
    - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
    - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
      - 1) Algorithm shall monitor loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics according to time constant changes imposed.
      - 2) Algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.
  7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
  8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
  - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
  - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
  - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
  - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
  - a. Class 1:
    - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledged conditions printed and displayed.
    - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
    - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
  - b. Class 2:
    - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
    - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
  - c. Class 3:

- 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
- 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
- 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
- 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.

d. Class 4:

- 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
- 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.

9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server for historical reporting.
4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Reports and logs shall be stored on server hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.

H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.

1. All I/O: With current status and values.
2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
6. Logs:
  - a. Alarm history.
  - b. System messages.
  - c. System events.
  - d. Trends.



- I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
- J. Standard Trends:
  - 1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
  - 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
  - 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching 75 of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
  - 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
  - 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
  - 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
  - 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.
- K. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.
  - 1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
  - 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server hard drives.
  - 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.
- L. Programming Software:
  - 1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
  - 2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
    - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
      - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.
      - 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
    - b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.
    - c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
  - 3. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.

M. Database Management Software:

1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall include database management software that separates database monitoring and managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.
2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
  - a. Backup.
  - b. Purge.
  - c. Restore.
4. Database management software shall support the following:
  - a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit information on database.
  - b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging, selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
  - c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
  - d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to have proper security level.
5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity, including the following:
  - a. Ready.
  - b. Purging record from a database.
  - c. Action failed.
  - d. Refreshing statistics.
  - e. Restoring database.
  - f. Shrinking a database.
  - g. Backing up a database.
  - h. Resetting Internet information services.
  - i. Starting network device manager.
  - j. Shutting down the network device manager.
  - k. Action successful.
6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database information once operator has logged on.
7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
  - a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.
  - b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.

- c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
  - d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
  - e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:
- a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all databases are within their limits.
  - b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their warning limit.
  - c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

## 2.10 OFFICE APPLICATION SOFTWARE

- A. Include current version of office application software at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Office application software package shall include multiple separate applications and use a common platform for all applications, similar to Microsoft's "Office Professional."
  - 1. Database.
  - 2. E-mail.
  - 3. Presentation.
  - 4. Publisher.
  - 5. Spreadsheet.
  - 6. Word processing.

## 2.11 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
  - 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
  - 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 0 to 150 deg F.

F. Power and Noise Immunity:

1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches (900 mm) of enclosure.

G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:

1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
  - a. Network Controllers: 50 percent.
  - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 60 percent.
  - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 70 percent.
2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
  - a. Monitoring and control.
  - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
  - c. Alarm management.
  - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
  - e. Maintenance applications.
  - f. Operator interfaces.
  - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.

H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:

1. Network Controllers:

- a. 20 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
- b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
  - 1) AIs: Three.
  - 2) AOs: Three.
  - 3) BIs: Five.
  - 4) BOs: Five.

2. Programmable Application Controllers:

- a. 20 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
- b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
  - 1) AIs: Three.
  - 2) AOs: Three.
  - 3) BIs: Five.
  - 4) BOs: Five.

- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
  1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
  2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
  3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
  4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
  
- J. Input and Output Point Interface:
  1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
  2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
  3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
  4. AIs:
    - a. AIs shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
    - b. AIs shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
    - c. Controller AIs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
    - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.
    - e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
    - f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
  5. AOs:
    - a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
    - b. Output signals shall have a range of 4 to 20 mA dc or zero- to 10-V dc as required to include proper control of output device.
    - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
    - d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
  6. BIs:
    - a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than 5-ms duration.
    - b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac peak.
    - c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.

- d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
  - e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
7. BOs:
- a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
    - 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
    - 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
  - b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
  - c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
  - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.

## 2.12 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

### A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

### B. Communication:

1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system network.
2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

- C. Operator Interface:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.

- D. Serviceability:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
  - 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
  - 3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.13 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

- A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:
  - 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
  - 2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
  - 3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
  - 4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
  - 5. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
  - 6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
  - 7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

- B. Communication:
  - 1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

- C. Operator Interface:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
  - 2. Local Keypad and Display:
    - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
    - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

- D. Serviceability:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.

2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.14 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.
  1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
  2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
- B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.
- C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
- D. Serviceability:
  1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
  2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
  3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

## 2.15 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General Controller Software Requirements:
  1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
  2. I/O points shall be identified by up to 30-character point name and up to 16-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
  3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
  4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.
- B. Security:
  1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
  2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.



3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
  4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
1. Weekly Schedule:
    - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
    - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
    - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
    - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
  2. Exception Schedules:
    - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
    - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
  3. Holiday Schedules:
    - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
    - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
    - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
  2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
  3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
  2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
  2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.

2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.

H. Remote Communication:

1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.

I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:

1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
  - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
  - b. Reset space temperature set points.
  - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
  - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
  - b. Changes in demand intervals.
  - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
  - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
  - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
  - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
  - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
  - a. Total electric consumption.
  - b. Peak demand.
  - c. Date and time of peak demand.
  - d. Daily peak demand.

J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.

- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
    - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
    - b. Proportional control.
    - c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
    - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
      - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
      - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
      - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
    - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).
- M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations:
1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
  2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
  3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling:
1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
  2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- P. On and Off Control with Differential:
1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
  2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- Q. Run-Time Totalization:
1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI and BO points.
  2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

## 2.16 ENCLOSURES

### A. General Enclosure Requirements:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in an enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
5. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door.

### B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect pneumatic, electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 20 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
11. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch- ((6-mm-)) high lettering.
12. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
13. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
14. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 25 percent spare area on face of panel.

### C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.

4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
- D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1:
1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 50 or UL 50E.
  2. Construct enclosure of steel.
  3. Finish enclosure inside and out with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  4. Internal panel mounting hardware, grounding hardware and sealing washers.
  5. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
  6. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
- E. Wall Mounted NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:
1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
  2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
  3. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush mounting.
  4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
  5. Construct enclosure of steel.
  6. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  7. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
  8. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
  9. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

## 2.17 RELAYS

- A. General-Purpose Relays:
1. Relays shall be heavy duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
  2. Relays shall be either double pole double throw (DPDT) or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
  3. Use a plug-in-style relay with an eight-pin octal plug for DPDT relays and an 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
  4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
  5. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
  6. Relays shall have LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
  7. Performance:
    - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
    - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
    - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
    - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
    - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
    - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.

- g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
  - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
  9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
  10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.
- B. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays:
1. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 240-V ac and 60 Hz.
  2. Relays shall be DPDT relay with up to eight programmable functions to provide on/off delay, interval and recycle timing functions.
  3. Use a plug-in-style relay with either an 8- or 11-pin octal plug.
  4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
  5. Enclose the relay in a dust-tight cover.
  6. Include knob and dial scale for setting delay time.
  7. Performance:
    - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
    - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
    - c. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
    - d. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
    - e. Recycle Time: 45 ms.
    - f. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
    - g. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.
    - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
  8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
  9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
  10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.
- C. Latching Relays:
1. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
  2. Relays shall be either DPDT or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
  3. Use a plug-in-style relay with a multibladed plug.
  4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
  5. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
  6. Performance:
    - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
    - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
    - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
    - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
    - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
    - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
    - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
    - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).

7. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
8. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
9. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

D. Current Sensing Relay:

1. Monitors ac current.
2. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
3. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
4. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
5. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
6. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
7. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

E. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay:

1. Description:
  - a. On-off control and status indication in a single device.
  - b. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
  - c. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.
2. Performance:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 30 to 140 deg F (Minus 34 to 60 deg C).
  - b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for 600-V ac.
3. Status Indication:
  - a. Current Sensor: Integral sensing for single-phase loads up to 20 A and external solid or split sensing ring for three-phase loads up to 150 A.
  - b. Current Sensor Range: As required by application.
  - c. Current Set Point: Fixed or adjustable as required by application.
  - d. Current Sensor Output:
4. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical cycles.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

## 2.18 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

A. Transformers:

1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of connected load.
2. Transformer shall be at least 40 VA.
3. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

- B. DC Power Supply:
1. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power supply with a mating mounting socket.
  2. Enclose circuitry in a housing.
  3. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
  4. Performance:
    - a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
    - b. Output current up to 100 mA.
    - c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
    - d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
    - e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
    - f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.

## 2.19 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS

- A. 250 through 1000 VA:
1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
  2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
    - a. Larger-capacity units shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
    - b. UPS shall provide five minutes of battery power.
  3. Performance:
    - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
    - b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
    - c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-V ac.
    - d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.
    - e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
    - f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full discharge to cutoff.
    - g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
    - h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.
  4. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
  5. Unit with integral line-interactive, power condition topology to eliminate all power contaminants.
  6. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and temperature.
  7. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.
  8. Unit with four NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles.
  9. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure).



10. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free. Battery replacement shall be front accessible by user without dropping load.
  11. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets to the particular installation location.
- B. 1000 through 3000 VA:
1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
  2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
    - a. Larger-capacity units, or multiple units, shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
    - b. UPS shall provide five minutes of battery power.
  3. Performance:
    - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, plus 20 to minus 30 percent.
    - b. Power Factor: Minimum 0.97 at full load.
    - c. Output Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, within 3 percent, steady state with rated output current of 10.0 A, 30.0-A peak.
    - d. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
    - e. Recharge time shall be a maximum of eight hours to 90 percent capacity.
  4. UPS bypass shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
  5. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure) and connect the points to the DDC system.
  6. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free.
  7. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets or rack models installed on matching racks, as applicable to the particular installation location and space availability/configuration.

## 2.20 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.
1. Wire size shall be at least No. 18 AWG.
  2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
  3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
  4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
  5. Furnish wire on spools.
- B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:
1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 22 AWG.
  2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
  3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.

4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 22 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.

1. Cable shall be plenum rated.
2. Cable shall comply with NFPA 70.
3. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.
4. Copper Cable for Ethernet Network:
  - a. 1000BASE-T or 1000BASE-TX.
  - b. TIA/EIA 586, Category 5e or Category 6.
  - c. Minimum No. 24 AWG solid.
  - d. Shielded Twisted Pair (STP) or Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).
  - e. Thermoplastic insulated conductors, enclosed in a thermoplastic outer jacket, Class CMP as plenum rated.

## 2.21 RACEWAYS FOR CONTROL WIRING, CABLING, AND TUBING

A. Metal Conduits, Tubing, and Fittings:

1. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. GRC: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
3. IMC: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
4. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
  - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

5. EMT: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
6. FMC: Comply with UL 1; aluminum.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
8. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA ANSI FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - a. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
  - b. Fittings for EMT:
    - 1) Material: Steel or die cast.
    - 2) Type: Setscrew or compression.
  - c. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
  - d. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
9. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

B. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

1. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  - a. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

C. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.22 CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

## 2.23 ACCESSORIES

### A. Damper Blade Limit Switches:

1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
3. Arrange for the mounting application.
4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.

### B. Manual Valves:

1. Needle Type:
  - a. PTFE packing.
  - b. Construct of brass for use with copper and polyethylene tubing and of stainless steel for use with stainless-steel tubing.
  - c. Aluminum T-bar handle.
  - d. Include tubing connections.
2. Ball Type:
  - a. Body: Bronze ASTM B 62 or ASTM B 61.
  - b. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel.
  - c. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
  - d. Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
  - e. Packing Ring: Reinforced PTFE.
  - f. Lever: Stainless steel with a vinyl grip.
  - g. 600 WOG.
  - h. Threaded end connections.

## 2.24 IDENTIFICATION

### A. Instrument Air Pipe and Tubing:

1. Engraved tag shall bear the following information:
  - a. Service (Example): "Instrument Air."
  - b. Pressure Range (Example): 0 to 30 psig (0 to 200 kPa).
2. Letter size shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch (6 mm) high.
3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on blue background.
4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded blue with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
5. Include tag with a brass grommet, chain and S-hook.

### B. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

1. Engraved tag bearing unique identification.

- a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
  2. Letter size shall be as follows:
    - a. Minimum of 0.5 inch (13 mm) high.
  3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on black background.
  4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
  5. Tag shall be fastened with drive pins.
  6. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.
- C. Valve Tags:
1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
  2. Tags shall be at least 1.5 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
  3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level, pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
  4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.
- D. Raceway and Boxes:
1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.
  3. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal Tubing."
- E. Equipment Warning Labels:
1. Acrylic label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
  2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
  3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."
  4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least 0.25 inch (6 mm) beyond white border.

## 2.25 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Product(s) and material(s) will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  - 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
  - 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
  - 2. Equipment to Be Connected:
    - a. Water pumps specified in Sections 221123 and 232123.
    - b. Boilers specified in Section 235216 "Condensing Boilers."
    - c. Air-handling units specified in Section 237313 "Modular Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units."
    - d. Existing RTU Core Building.

### 3.3 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.

- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. DDC control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "DDC Control Dampers."
  - 2. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  - 3. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
  
- C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
  - 2. Pipe-mounted flow meters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  - 3. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Flow meters are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Liquid temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  - 4. Pipe-thermowells. Liquid thermowells are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."

### 3.4 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
  - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
  - 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
  - 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.

4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:
1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
  2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.
- K. Corrosive Environments:
1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
    - b. Process exhaust-air streams.
  2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
  3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.5 OPERATOR WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

- A. Desktop Operator Workstations Installation:
1. Install software on existing workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
  2. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
- B. Portable Operator Workstations Installation:
1. Install software on existing portable operator workstation provided by the owner. Turn over portable operator workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
  2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
- C. Color Graphics Application:
1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
  2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.



3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Engineer's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's and Engineer's review and feedback.
7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

### 3.6 GATEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
  1. Install gateway(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
- B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

### 3.7 ROUTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
  1. Install router(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
- B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

### 3.8 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply.
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
  1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
  2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
  1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.

2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

G. Application-Specific Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

### 3.9 ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION

A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:

1. Gateways.
2. Routers.
3. Controllers.
4. Electrical power devices.
5. UPS units.
6. Relays.
7. Accessories.
8. Instruments.
9. Actuators

B. Attach wall-mounted enclosures to wall using the following types of steel struts:

1. For NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Use galvanized-steel steel strut and hardware.
2. For NEMA 250, Type 4 Enclosures and Enclosures Located Outdoors: Use stainless-steel strut and hardware.
3. Install plastic caps on exposed cut edges of strut.

C. Install floor-mounted enclosures located in mechanical equipment rooms on concrete housekeeping pads. Attach enclosure legs using galvanized steel anchors.

D. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250 rating of connected enclosures.

### 3.10 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.

B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.

- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

### 3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique identification on face for each of the following:
  - 1. Operator workstation.
  - 2. Printer.
  - 3. Gateway.
  - 4. Router.
  - 5. DDC controller.
  - 6. Enclosure.
  - 7. Electrical power device.
  - 8. UPS unit.
  - 9. Accessory.
- C. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of each control damper and valve actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels:
  - 1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
  - 2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

### 3.12 NETWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Install copper cable when connecting between the following network devices:
  - 1. Operator workstations.
  - 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
  - 3. Network controllers.
- B. Install copper cable when connecting between the following:

1. Gateways.
2. Gateways and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
3. Routers.
4. Routers and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
5. Network controllers and programmable application controllers.
6. Programmable application controllers.
7. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
8. Application-specific controllers.

C. Install network cable in continuous raceway.

1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of conduit.

### 3.13 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.

### 3.14 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with TIA 568-C.1.

C. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

D. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

E. Field Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

F. Conduit Installation:

1. Install conduit expansion joints where conduit runs exceed 200 feet (60 m), and conduit crosses building expansion joints.
2. Coordinate conduit routing with other trades to avoid conflicts with ducts, pipes and equipment and service clearance.
3. Maintain at least 3-inch (75-mm) separation where conduits run axially above or below ducts and pipes.
4. Limit above-grade conduit runs to 100 feet (30 m) without pull or junction box.

5. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls, or rotating equipment.
6. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
7. Flexible conduit is permitted only where flexibility and vibration control is required.
8. Limit flexible conduit to 3 feet (1 m) long.
9. Conduit shall be continuous from outlet to outlet, from outlet to enclosures, pull and junction boxes, and shall be secured to boxes in such manner that each system shall be electrically continuous throughout.
10. Direct bury conduits underground or install in concrete-encased duct bank where indicated.
  - a. Use rigid, nonmetallic, Schedule 80 PVC.
  - b. Provide a burial depth according to NFPA 70, but not less than 24 inches (600 mm).
11. Secure threaded conduit entering an instrument enclosure, cabinet, box, and trough, with a locknut on outside and inside, such that conduit system is electrically continuous throughout. Provide a metal bushing on inside with insulated throats. Locknuts shall be the type designed to bite into the metal or, on inside of enclosure, shall have a grounding wedge lug under locknut.
12. Conduit box-type connectors for conduit entering enclosures shall have an insulated throat.
13. Connect conduit entering enclosures in wet locations with box-type connectors or with watertight sealing locknuts or other fittings.
14. Offset conduits where entering surface-mounted equipment.
15. Seal conduit runs used by sealing fittings to prevent the circulation of air for the following:
  - a. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - b. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  - c. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.

G. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
2. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
  - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
3. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. UTP Cable Installation:

- a. Comply with TIA 568-C.2.
  - b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination, to maintain cable geometry.
6. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.
  7. Provide strain relief.
  8. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
    - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
    - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
  9. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
  10. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
  11. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminal boards. Do not bend flexible coaxial cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
  12. Ground wire shall be copper and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
  13. Wire and cable shall be continuous from terminal to terminal without splices.
  14. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
  15. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
  16. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
  17. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.
  18. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded wire and cable. Remove and discard wire and cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
  19. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  20. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
  21. Protection from Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI): Provide installation free of (EMI). As a minimum, comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA 569-C for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
    - b. Separation between open cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
      - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
    - c. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
  - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
- d. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
  - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
- e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
- f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

#### B. Testing:

1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.
2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.
4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.

5. Test Equipment: Use a fiber-optic time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

### 3.16 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Control Damper Checkout:
  1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
  2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
  3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
  5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
  6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- E. Control Valve Checkout:
  1. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
  2. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  3. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
  4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
  5. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
  6. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.
- F. Instrument Checkout:
  1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
  2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
  4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
  5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
  6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
  7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
  8. For temperature instruments:
    - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
    - b. Verify length and insertion.



3.17 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
  - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
  - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
  - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
  - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
  - 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
  - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.

4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

M. Control Valves:

1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

Q. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

### 3.18 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.

B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

### 3.19 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

A. Testing:

1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
7. Operate each analog point at the following:
  - a. Upper quarter of range.
  - b. Lower quarter of range.
  - c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

### 3.20 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
  1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
  2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
  3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
  4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
  5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
  6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
  7. Required surge protection is installed.
  8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
  9. Each controller's programming is backed up.
  10. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
  11. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
  12. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.

13. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
14. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
15. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
16. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
17. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
18. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
19. View trend data where applicable.
20. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
21. Safety controls and devices function properly.
22. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
23. Electrical interlocks function properly.
24. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphics are created.
25. Record Drawings are completed.

E. Test Plan:

1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
6. Submit test plan documentation 20 business days before start of tests.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
  - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
  - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
    - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
    - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
    - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
  - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:

- a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
  - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
  7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.
- G. DDC System Response Time Test:
1. Simulate HLC.
    - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of 50 percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and 50 percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.
  2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
  3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
  4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
    - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
    - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
  5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
    - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than two seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
    - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
    - c. Compliance with response times specified.
  6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.
- H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:
1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
  2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

### 3.21 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Engineer and Owner when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.

2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
  3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
  4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals when no deficiencies are reported.
- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
  2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
  3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - a. Accuracy and calibration of 10 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
    - b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to 10 I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
    - c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
    - d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
    - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
    - f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
    - g. For up to three HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including

different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.

- h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.
- i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
- j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
- k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
- l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
- n. Online user guide and help functions.
- o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
- p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- q. For Each Network and Programmable Application Controller:
  - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
  - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable operator workstation. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
  - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
  - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
  - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
  - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
  - 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
  - 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
  - 2) Graphics are complete.
- s. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and network management. Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.
  - 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
  - 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
  - 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated.

- 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
- 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
- 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.
- 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
- 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
- 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
- 10) Device and Network Management:
  - a) Display of network device status.
  - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
  - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
  - d) Time synchronization.
  - e) Remote device re-initialization.
  - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
  - g) Configuration management of routers.

### 3.22 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.23 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

### 3.24 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.



B. Extent of Training:

1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:
  - a. Provide not less than one day of training.
  - b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.

C. Training Schedule:

1. Schedule training with Owner 20 business days before expected Substantial Completion.
2. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least 10 business days of notice in advance of training.
3. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions.

D. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

E. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.

F. Organization of Training Sessions:

1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system.

G. Training Outline:

1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least 10 business day before scheduling training.

H. Video of Training Sessions:

1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate recording file for each session.

2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
3. Provide Owner with two copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923

## SECTION 230923.11 - CONTROL VALVES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes control valves and actuators for DDC systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
  - 2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.11.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.
- D. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.
- E. Control valve characteristics and rangeability shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.
- F. Selection Criteria:

1. Control valves shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:
  - a. Heating Hot Water: 30-60 psig and 40-200 deg F.
2. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Heating Hot Water: Open.
3. Minimum Cv shall be calculated at 10 percent of design flow, with a coincident pressure differential equal to the system design pump head.
4. In water systems, select modulating control valves at terminal equipment for a design Cv based on a pressure drop of 5 psig ((34 kPa)) at design flow unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

### A. Ball Valves with Single Port and Characterized Disk:

1. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 ((DN 25)) and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 38) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Nominal 400 WOG.
3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).
5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
8. Stem and Stem Extension:
  - a. Material to match ball.
  - b. Blowout-proof design.
  - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
11. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

## 2.3 BUTTERFLY-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

### A. Commercial-Grade, Two-Way Butterfly Valves:

1. Performance:
  - a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig (1724 kPa).
  - b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
  - c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
  - d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.

2. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
3. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
4. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
5. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE with retaining ring.
6. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
7. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
8. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
  - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - b. Body size.
  - c. Body and trim materials.
  - d. Flow arrow.

## 2.4 GLOBE-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

### A. General Globe-Style Valve Requirements:

1. Globe-style control valve body dimensions shall comply with ISA 75.08.01.
2. Construct the valves to be serviceable from the top.
3. For cage guided valves, trim shall be field interchangeable for different valve flow characteristics, such as equal percentage, linear, and quick opening.
4. Reduced trim for one nominal size smaller shall be available for industrial valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and larger.
5. Replaceable seats and plugs.
6. Furnish each control valve with a corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - b. Body and trim size.
  - c. Arrow indicating direction of flow.

### B. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Globe Style: Single port.
2. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass with ASME B16.5, Class 250 rating.
3. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Bonnet: Screwed.
5. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
6. Plug: Top guided.
7. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
8. Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F (2 to 120 deg C).
9. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F (2 to 65 deg C).
10. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
11. Rangeability: 25 to 1.
12. Equal percentage flow characteristic.

### C. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150):

1. Globe Style: Single port.
2. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 125.

3. End Connections: Flanged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
4. Bonnet: Bolted.
5. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
6. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
7. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
8. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F (2 to 138 deg C).
9. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
10. Rangeability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
11. Modified linear flow characteristic.

## 2.5 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

- A. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff head.
- B. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.
- C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- D. Voltage: 24-V ac.
- E. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
- F. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- G. Construction:
  1. For Actuators Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
  2. For Actuators from 100 to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel or cast-aluminum housing.
  3. For Actuators Larger Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- H. Field Adjustment:
  1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
  2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.
- I. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- J. Modulating Actuators:
  1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
  2. Control Input Signal:

- a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
- b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
- c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry contact closure, triac sink, or source controller.
- d. Programmable Multi-Function:
  - 1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field programmable.
  - 2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
  - 3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

K. Fail-Safe:

- 1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
- 2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
- 3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.

L. Integral Overload Protection:

- 1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
- 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

M. Valve Attachment:

- 1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
- 2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
- 3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

N. Temperature and Humidity:

- 1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
- 2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

O. Enclosure:

- 1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.

2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.

P. Stroke Time:

1. Operate valve from fully closed to fully open within 15 seconds.
2. Operate valve from fully open to fully closed within 15 seconds.
3. Move valve to failed position within 15 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.

Q. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Control Valves:

1. VAV Hot Water Coil Systems, Two-Way Applications Controlled by temperature: Globe-style, two-way valves, full modulation.
2. Heating Hot Water System, Two-Way Applications Controlled by Temperature piping less than or equal to 2" NPS: Ball or Globe style, Two- Way, full modulation.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated.
- D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies.
- F. Fastening Hardware:
  1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.



3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- H. Corrosive Environments:
1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
  2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
    - b. Process exhaust airstreams.
  3. Use Type 316 stainless-steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
  4. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  5. Where control devices are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.
- B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- C. Where indicated, install control valve with three-valve bypass manifold to allow for control valve isolation and removal without interrupting system flow by providing manual throttling valve in bypass pipe.
- D. Valve Orientation:

1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.

E. Clearance:

1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
2. Install valves with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.

F. Threaded Valves:

1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
2. Align threads at point of assembly.
3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.

G. Flanged Valves:

1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

H. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

I. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

J. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve and on face of ceiling directly below valves concealed above ceilings.

### 3.5 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

A. Control Valve Checkout:

1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.

5. For pneumatic valves, verify that pressure gauges are provided in each air line to valve actuator and positioner.
6. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
7. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
8. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
9. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
10. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
11. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

### 3.6 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- D. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.11

## SECTION 230923.14 - FLOW INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Airflow sensors.
2. Airflow switches.
3. Airflow transmitters.
4. Liquid flow meters.
5. Liquid flow sensors.
6. Liquid flow switches.
7. Liquid flow transmitters.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.14.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
4. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR FLOW INSTRUMENTS

- A. Air sensors and transmitters shall have an extended range of 10 percent above Project design flow and 10 percent below minimum Project flow to signal abnormal flow conditions and to provide flexibility for changes in operation.
- B. Liquid sensors, meters, and transmitters shall have an extended range of 20 percent above Project design flow and 20 percent below Project minimum flow to signal abnormal flow conditions and to provide flexibility for changes in operation.

### 2.3 AIRFLOW SENSORS:

#### A. Performance Requirements:

- 1. Adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
- 2. Airflow Sensor and Transmitter Range: Extended range of 20 percent above Project design flow and 20 percent below minimum Project flow to signal abnormal flow conditions.
- 3. Manufacturer shall certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.
  - a. Product certificates are required.

#### B. Pitot-Tube Airflow Sensor Station:

- 1. Description: Multiple total- and static-pressure sensors positioned at the center of equal area of the station cross section and interconnected by respective averaging manifolds.
  - a. Stations 4 sq. ft. (0.4 sq. m) and Smaller: One total-pressure sensor and one static-pressure sensor for every 16 sq. in. (103 sq. cm) of station area.
  - b. Stations Larger than 4 sq. ft. (0.4 sq. m): One total-pressure sensor and one static-pressure sensor for every 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm) of station area.
- 2. Casing: Galvanized sheet steel at least 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick with coating complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275). Casings shall be stainless steel, 0.0781 inch (2.0 mm) thick, when connected to stainless duct and aluminum, 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) thick, when connected to aluminum duct.
  - a. Joints and Seams: Continuously weld. Clean galvanized areas damaged by welding and coat with aluminum paint.
  - b. Casing Depth: At least 8 inches (200 mm).
  - c. Casing Flanges: Outward flange, minimum flange face 1.5 inches (38 mm).

- d. Casing Configuration and Size: Match shape (rectangular, round, flat oval) and same size as adjacent duct unless otherwise indicated.
3. Include an open parallel cell air straightener or air equalizer honeycomb mechanically fastened to casing.
    - a. Construct straightener or equalizer from Type 3003 aluminum or Type 316 stainless steel, depending on casing material. Use stainless steel for units with stainless-steel casings.
  4. Construct pressure sensor array from drawn copper or stainless-steel tubing. Use stainless steel for units with stainless-steel casings. Copper tubing shall comply with ASTM B 75 and ASTM B 280. Minimum tube wall thickness shall be 0.030 inch (0.8 mm). Include internal piping and external pressure transmitter ports.
  5. Station Labeling: Identification label on each station casing indicating model number, size, area, and application-specific airflow range.
  6. Performance:
    - a. Pressure Loss: 0.015-inch wg (3.8 Pa) at 1000 fpm (5 m/s), or 0.085-inch wg (22.5 Pa) at 2000 fpm (10 m/s).
    - b. Accuracy: Within 2 percent of actual airflow.
    - c. Self-Generated Sound: NC 40 and sound level within the duct shall not be amplified.
    - d. Performance rated and tested according to AMCA 610. Each station shall bear the AMCA seal.

## 2.4 AIRFLOW SWITCHES

### A. Polymer Film Sail Switch:

1. Performance:
  - a. Suitable for applications operating at velocities up to 400 fpm (2.0 m/s).
  - b. Suitable for mounting with air direction in horizontal, vertical up or down.
  - c. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - d. Voltage: 24-, 120-, 240-V ac.
  - e. Normally Open Full Load Current: 2 A at 120-V ac.
  - f. Normally Closed Full Load Current: 1 A at 120-V ac.
  - g. Normally open switch actuates at 250 fpm (1.3 m/s) and opens at 75 fpm (0.4 m/s).
  - h. Normally closed switch actuates at 75 fpm (0.4 m/s) and closes at 250 fpm (1.3 m/s).
  - i. Maximum Process Temperature: 170 deg F (77 deg C).
  - j. Maximum Ambient Temperature: 125 deg F (52 deg C).
2. Construction:
  - a. Polyester film sail encasing a wire frame.
  - b. Sail actuates a SPDT snap switch.
  - c. Enclosure Material: Zinc-plated steel.

- d. Enclosure with removable cover.
- e. NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
- f. Removable spring counterbalances sail to allow mounting in either vertical (up or down) or horizontal airflow.
- g. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
- h. Conduit Connections: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size conduit knock outs on top and bottom.

B. Stainless-Steel Single Vane Switch:

1. Description:

- a. Velocities up to 2000 fpm (10.2 m/s).
- b. Suitable for mounting with air direction in horizontal.

2. Performance:

- a. Voltage: 125-, 240-, and 480-V ac.
- b. Full Load Current: 9.8 A at 125-V ac.
- c. Field-Adjustable Velocity Set Point: 400 to 1600 fpm (2.0 to 8.2 m/s).
- d. Maximum Process Temperature: 180 deg F (82 deg C).
- e. Maximum Ambient Temperature: 125 deg F (52 deg C).

3. Construction:

- a. Stainless-steel vane.
- b. Vane actuates a SPDT snap switch.
- c. Enclosure Material: Die-cast metal.
- d. Enclosure with removable cover.
- e. NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
- f. Screw set-point adjustment.
- g. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
- h. Conduit Connections: 1-inch (27-mm) trade size conduit knock outs on top and bottom.

## 2.5 AIRFLOW TRANSMITTERS

A. Airflow Transmitters with 0.25 Percent Accuracy and Auto-Zero Feature:

- 1. Transmitter shall receive total- and static-pressure signals from a flow element, amplify signals, extract the square foot, and scale the signals to produce 4- to 20-mA dc output signals linear to airflow.
- 2. NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
- 3. Construct assembly so shock, vibration, and pressures surges of up to 1 psig (6.9 kPa) will neither harm transmitter, nor affect its accuracy.
- 4. Transmitter with automatic zeroing circuit capable of automatically readjusting transmitter zero at predetermined time intervals. The automatic zeroing circuit shall re-zero the transmitter to within 0.1 percent of true zero.
- 5. Performance:

- a. Range: As required by application and at least 10 percent below minimum airflow and 10 percent greater than design airflow.
  - b. Calibrated Span: Field adjustable, minus 40 percent of the range.
  - c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of natural span.
  - d. Repeatability: Within 0.15 percent of calibrated span.
  - e. Linearity: Within 0.2 percent of calibrated span.
  - f. Hysteresis and Deadband (Combined): Less than 0.2 percent of calibrated span.
6. Integral digital display for continuous indication of airflow.
- B. Pressure Differential Transmitters for Airflow Measurement:
- 1. Performance:
    - a. Range: As required by application and at least 10 percent below minimum airflow and 10 percent greater than design airflow.
    - b. Accuracy: Within 1 percent of the full-scale range.
    - c. Hysteresis: Within 0.10 percent of full scale.
    - d. Repeatability: Within 0.05 percent of full scale.
    - e. Stability: Within one percent of span per year.
    - f. Overpressure: 10 psig (69 kPa).
    - g. Temperature Limits: Zero to 150 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 66 deg C).
    - h. Compensate Temperature Limits: 40 to 150 deg F (4 to 66 deg C).
    - i. Thermal Effects: 0.033 percent of full scale per degree F.
    - j. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
  - 2. Output Signals:
    - a. Analog Current Signal:
      - 1) Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
      - 2) Signal capable of operating into 800-ohm load.
    - b. Analog Voltage Signal:
      - 1) Three wire, zero to 10 V.
      - 2) Minimum Load Resistance: 1000 ohms.
  - 3. Display: Four-digit digital with minimum 0.4-inch- (10-mm-) high numeric characters.
  - 4. Operator Interface:
    - a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
  - 5. Construction:
    - a. Plastic casing with removable plastic cover.
    - b. Fittings: Swivel fittings for connection to copper tubing or barbed fittings for connection to polyethylene tubing. Fittings on bottom of instrument case.
    - c. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
    - d. Vertical plane mounting.
    - e. NEMA 250, Type 4.



- f. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.

## 2.6 LIQUID FLOW METERS

### A. General Requirements for Liquid Flow Meters:

1. Adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
2. Liquid Sensors, Meters, and Transmitters: Extended range of 20 percent above Project design flow and 20 percent below Project minimum flow to signal abnormal flow conditions.
3. Manufacturer shall certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.
4. Product certificates are required.

### B. Insertion Paddle Wheel Flow Meter, NPS 1 (DN 25):

#### 1. Description:

- a. Insertion-type meter with a non-magnetic spinning paddle wheel.
- b. Each meter shall be wet calibrated at factory to standards traceable to NIST and provided with a certificate of calibration.
- c. Programming kit including cable connector and Microsoft-Windows-compatible software.
- d. Where indicated, provide meter with bi-directional flow measurement.

#### 2. Performance:

- a. Range: 0.33 to 20 fps (0.1 to 6.1 m/s).
- b. Accuracy: Within 1 percent of flow rate.
- c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 percent.
- d. Ambient Temperature: 14 to 150 deg F (Minus 10 to plus 66 deg C).
- e. Maximum Process Temperature: 300 deg F (149 deg C) with PEEK sensor tip.
- f. Maximum Pressure: 350 psig at 300 deg F (2413 kPa at 149 deg C) with PEEK sensor tip.
- g. Pressure Drop: Up to 0.5 psig at 10 fps (3.5 kPa at 3 m/s) for pipe sizes NPS 1-1/2 (DN 20) and larger.

#### 3. Output Signal:

- a. Unidirectional Flow Meter: Frequency pulse.
- b. Bi-directional Flow Meter: Analog 4- to 20-mA signal plus direction.

#### 4. Operator Interface:

- a. Programming: Instrument programming through computer and programming kit.
- b. Digital Display: Eight-character digital display of flow rate, flow totalization, input, output, and flow direction for bi-directional meters.

#### 5. Construction:

- a. Wetted Metal Parts (Including Sensor Stem, Mounting Adapter, and Isolation Valve): Type 316 stainless steel.
- b. Sensor Tip: PPS or PEEK.
- c. Shaft: Tungsten carbide.
- d. Impeller: Stainless steel.
- e. Process Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25).
- f. Instrument Isolation Valve: Full port ball valve for system isolation.
- g. Insertion Depth: Threaded positioning nut for accurate sensor depth in the pipe.
- h. Electronics Enclosure:
  - 1) Polypropylene with Viton-sealed acrylic cover.
  - 2) Removable cover.
  - 3) NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - 4) Electrical Connection: Screw terminals.
  - 5) Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch ((16-mm))trade size.

C. Insertion Turbine Flow Meter:

1. Description:

- a. Operating pressure of 300 psig (2068 kPa) with a temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C).
- b. Meters in hot water systems shall be suitable for maximum system temperatures encountered, but not less than 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- c. Pressure drop not to exceed 1 psig (6.9 kPa) at 20-fps (6.1-m/s) flow velocity in a NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe and decreasing in large pipe with lower velocity.
- d. Sensor Accuracy:
  - 1) Within 1 percent of actual flow between the flow velocity range of 3 to 30 fps (0.9 to 9.1 m/s).
  - 2) Within 2 percent of actual flow between the flow velocity range of 0.4 to 20 fps (0.1 to 6.1 m/s).
  - 3) Within 0.5 percent of actual reading at the calibrated velocity.
- e. Wet calibrate and tag sensors to standards traceable to NIST, and provide each sensor with a certificate of calibration.

2. Sensor:

- a. For Pipe Sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Single turbine sensors.
- b. For Pipe Sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Dual turbine sensors.
- c. Piping with Bi-directional Flow: Bi-directional dual turbine sensors.
- d. Dual turbine sensors shall have dual, contra-rotating turbine elements, each turbine element with its own rotational sensing system, and an averaging circuit.
- e. Rotational sensing of each turbine shall be accomplished electronically by sensing electronic impedance change (non-magnetic and non-photoelectric).
- f. Sensor shall have an integral frequency output linear with flow rate. For dual turbine units, with individual top and bottom turbine outputs for diagnostic purposes.

- g. Bi-directional sensors shall have isolated solid-state dry contacts with a contact rating of 100 mA at 50 V. The contacts shall close when the flow in direction of arrow is 0.18 fps (0.05 m/s) or more.
- h. Flow sensor shall be complete with installation hardware necessary to enable insertion and removal from pipe without system shutdown.
- i. Construct turbine elements of polypropylene with sapphire jewel bearings and tungsten carbide shafts. Construct wetted metal components of Type 316 stainless steel, including installation hardware.
- j. House sensor electronics in a NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.
- k. Enclosure shall include connection(s) for field-installed conduit.
- l. Sensor shall have cable of length sufficient to connect to display module.
- m. Sensor housing shall have full port ball valve for system isolation.

3. Display Module:

- a. Remote from sensor.
- b. House in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure.
- c. Label terminal strip for all wiring connections.
- d. 120-V ac power supply with 24-V dc output to power the flow sensor.
- e. Remote Interface:
  - 1) Hardwired Analog Outputs for Flow Rate and Totalization: 4 to 20 mA and zero- to 10-V dc.
  - 2) Serial Communication Interface: Compatible with host to share flow rate and totalized flow data.
  - 3) Outputs linear to within 0.1 percent of calibrated span.
- f. Digital display for flow rate and totalized flow.
  - 1) At least eight display digits for totalization.
  - 2) Bi-directional units with separate digital display for flow and totalization in each direction.
- g. Local reset of flow totalization.
- h. Program and data shall be stored in nonvolatile memory in event of power loss.
- i. For bi-directional units, with display of flow direction (contacts open or closed).

D. Inline Turbine Flow Meter:

1. Description:

- a. Available in NPS 3/4 and NPS 1 (DN 20 and DN 25).
- b. Operating pressure of 300 psig (2068 kPa) with a temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C).
- c. Meters in hot water systems shall be suitable for maximum system temperatures encountered, but not less than 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- d. Pressure drop not to exceed 3 psig at 38 gpm (21 kPa at 2.4 L/s).
- e. Sensor Accuracy:
  - 1) Within 2 percent of actual flow between the flow range of 0.8 to 38 gpm (0.05 to 2.4 L/s).

- 2) Within 0.5 percent of actual reading at the calibrated velocity.
  - f. Wet calibrate and tag sensors to standards traceable to NIST, and provide each sensor with a certificate of calibration.
2. Sensor:
- a. Rotational sensing of turbine shall be accomplished electronically by sensing electronic impedance change (non-magnetic and non-photoelectric).
  - b. Sensor shall have an integral frequency output linear with flow rate.
  - c. Sensor shall have threaded union on each end.
  - d. Construct turbine elements of polypropylene with sapphire jewel bearings and tungsten carbide shafts.
  - e. Construct wetted metal components of brass or stainless steel.
  - f. House sensor electronics in a NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.
  - g. Enclosure shall include connection(s) for field-installed conduit.
  - h. Sensor shall have cable of length sufficient to connect to display module.
3. Display Module:
- a. Remote from sensor.
  - b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - c. Label terminal strip for all wiring connections.
  - d. 120-V ac power supply with 24-V dc output to power the flow sensor.
  - e. Remote Interface:
    - 1) Hardwired Analog Outputs for Flow Rate and Totalization: 4 to 20 mA and zero- to 10-V dc.
    - 2) Serial Communication Interface: Compatible with host to share flow rate and totalized flow data.
    - 3) Outputs linear to within 0.1 percent of calibrated span.
  - f. Digital display of flow rate and totalized flow.
  - g. At least eight display digits for totalization.
  - h. Local reset of flow totalization.
  - i. Program and data shall be stored in nonvolatile memory in the event of power loss.

## 2.7 LIQUID FLOW SENSORS (PRIMARY ELEMENTS)

### A. Venturis:

- 1. On request, submit independent testing documentation (product test reports), demonstrating compliance with specified performance.
- 2. Standard: ASME MFC-3M.
- 3. Performance:
  - a. Accuracy within 0.5 percent of measured flow throughout flow range from design to 10 percent of design flow.
  - b. Accuracy with five pipe diameters of straight pipe upstream and two pipe diameters downstream.

- c. Size and beta ratio shall be matched with transmitter to provide accuracy of entire assembly within 1 percent of design flow rate, when the flow rate is allowed to vary between 10 to 100 percent of the design.
4. Construction:
- a. One-piece bronze or brass construction with threaded connections for pipe sizes NPS 1/2 through NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50).
  - b. One-piece plated cast steel with flanged connections for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 8 (DN 65 to DN 200), and fabricated steel with flanged connections for larger sizes.
  - c. Sensing Taps: Two, accurately located built-in sensing taps, nipples, shut-off valves, and quick connect coupling.
  - d. Identification Tag: Attached to each venturi with a chain and label indicating pipe size, venturi series, station identification, and meter reading at flow rate and pressure differential.
  - e. Use venturi with pressure differential transmitter.
- B. Orifice Plates:
- 1. Standards: ASME MFC-3M or ASME MFC-14M.
  - 2. Performance:
    - a. Orifice plates shall be sharp, square-edged concentric type.
    - b. Shop fabricate and calibrate orifice meter runs through NPS 2 (DN 50).
    - c. Field fabricate orifice runs NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger.
    - d. Meter run piping or tubing shall be uniform internal surface, which is free of internal grooves and striations, but is not polished. Out of roundness shall not exceed 0.5 percent. A reduction of the pipe diameter or distortion caused by welding is unacceptable.
    - e. Size orifice plates for 100-inch wg (24.9-kPa) pressure differential, except that the absolute value of the meter range shall not exceed the absolute value of the flowing pressure.
    - f. Ratio of orifice diameter to actual internal pipe diameter d/B (beta) shall be between 0.70 and 0.30.
    - g. Locate orifice plates in horizontal or vertical lines in accordance with good metering practice.
    - h. Minimum upstream and downstream straight pipe shall comply with ASME Fluid Meters Research Committee Reports.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Fabricate the orifice plate and matching companion flanges of Type 316 stainless steel.
    - b. Transmitter connection shall be at least NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
    - c. Stamp the orifice plates with the number and the orifice bore on the handle of the plate.
  - 4. Use orifice plate with pressure differential transmitter.
  - 5. Calibration information and calculations shall comply with either of the referenced standards for each orifice plate.

C. Portable Meter Package for Liquid Flow Sensors:

1. Metal-reinforced-plastic carrying case.
2. Waterproof meter with nominal 6-inch (150-mm) round dial face.
3. Meter with dual rupture-proof liquid-filled bellows having integral temperature compensation.
4. Meter with external range and zero adjustment.
5. Multiple meters in package, if required to accommodate venturis with a wide range of pressure signals.
6. Two connecting hoses, [10-feet (3-m)] <Insert dimension> long, with quick connect couplings compatible with venturi couplings.
7. Two brass blowdown valves with Buna-N seals and blowdown hoses.
8. Instruction book with flow versus differential curves.
9. Suitable for working pressure of 200 psig ((1380 kPa))at 200 deg F (93.3 deg C).
10. Portable meter package to connect to flow sensor without disturbing connection to pressure differential transmitter. Provide isolation valves at connections.
11. Turn over to Owner at Project completion.

2.8 LIQUID FLOW SWITCHES

A. Liquid Flow Switch (Bellows Type):

1. Description:
  - a. Field-adjustable four-vane combinations.
  - b. Field-adjustable set-point adjustment screw.
  - c. Suitable for pipe sizes NPS 1 through NPS 8DN 25 through DN 200.
  - d. Switch mounted vertically in horizontal pipe.
2. Performance:
  - a. Flow Rate Actuation and De-actuation: Varies with vane combination and set-point adjustment.
  - b. Pressure Limit: 145 psig (1000 kPa).
  - c. Temperature Limit: 230 deg F (110 deg C).
  - d. Electrical Rating: 10 A resistive, 3 A conductive at 250-V ac.
  - e. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
3. Wetted Parts Construction:
  - a. Bellows: Tin-bronze.
  - b. Vanes: Stainless steel.
  - c. Body: Forged brass.
  - d. Process Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25).
4. Enclosure:
  - a. Die-cast aluminum alloy.
  - b. NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - c. Electrical Connection: Cable gland with attached wire leads.

B. Liquid Flow Switch (Magnetic Type):

1. Description:

- a. Field-adjustable five-vane combinations.
- b. Suitable for pipe sizes NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 20 (DN 40 to DN 500).
- c. Mounting Suitable for Application: Switch vertically mounted in horizontal pipe, or switch horizontally mounted in vertical pipe with flow up.
- d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for hazardous-environment Class I, Groups C and D; Class II, Groups E, F, and G.

2. Performance:

- a. Flow Rate Actuation and De-actuation: Varies with vane combination.
- b. Pressure Limit: 1000 psig (6895 kPa) for brass body, 2000 psig (13790 kPa) for Type 316 stainless-steel body.
- c. Temperature Range: Minus 4 to plus 275 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 135 deg C).
- d. Electrical Rating: 10 A at 125/250-V ac.
- e. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.

3. Wetted Parts Construction:

- a. Vanes: Type 316 stainless steel.
- b. Body: Brass or Type 316 stainless steel.
- c. Magnetic Keeper: Type 316 stainless steel.
- d. Process Connection: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).

4. Enclosure:

- a. Die-cast aluminum alloy.
- b. Threaded cover.
- c. NEMA 250, Type 4.
- d. Electrical Connection: Terminal block.
- e. Conduit Connection: 3/4-inch ((21-mm))trade size.

2.9 LIQUID FLOW TRANSMITTERS

A. Liquid Pressure Differential Transmitter for Flow Measurement:

1. Performance:

- a. Range: Approximately 2 times the set point.
- b. Span: Adjustable plus or minus 1 mA, non-interactive.
- c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
- d. Maximum Operating Pressure: 2.5 times range.
- e. Temperature Limits: Zero to 175 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 79 deg C).
- f. Compensate Temperature Limits: 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 1 to plus 66 deg C).
- g. Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
- h. Response Time: 30 to 50 ms.

- i. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
- 2. Analog Output Current Signal:
  - a. Two wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
  - b. Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
- 3. Operator Interface:
  - a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
  - b. Bleed screws on side of body, two screws on low-pressure side and one screw on high-pressure side, for air in line and pressure cavity.
- 4. Construction:
  - a. Aluminum and stainless-steel enclosure with removable cover.
  - b. Wetted parts of transmitter constructed of 17-4 PH or 300 series stainless steel.
  - c. NPS 1/4 (DN 8) process connections on side of instrument enclosure.
  - d. Knock out for 1/2-inch (15-mm) trade size conduit connection on side of instrument enclosure.
  - e. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
  - f. NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - g. Mounting bracket shall be suitable for installation.
- 5. Transmitter shall have three-valve manifold. Construct manifold of brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Manifold shall have NPS 1/4 (DN 8) process connections.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Select from instrument types to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
- B. Duct-Mounted Airflow Sensors:
  - 1. Measured Velocities 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) and Less: Thermal airflow station.
  - 2. Measured Velocities Greater than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) Pitot-tube airflow sensor station.
- C. Damper-Mounted Airflow Sensors:
  - 1. Measured Velocities 400 fpm (2.0 m/s) and Less: Thermal airflow station.
  - 2. Measured Velocities Greater than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) Pitot-tube airflow sensor station.
- D. Fan-Mounted Airflow Sensors:
  - 1. Measured Velocities Greater than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s): Thermal airflow station.
- E. Airflow Switches:
  - 1. Measured Velocities 400 fpm ((2.0 m/s)) and Less: Polymer film sail switch.



2. Measured Velocities Greater than 400 fpm (2.0 m/s): Stainless-steel single-vane switch.

F. Airflow Transmitters for Use with Pitot-Tube-Type Sensors:

1. Airflow transmitter with 0.25 percent accuracy and auto-zero feature.

G. Liquid Flow Sensors (Primary Elements):

1. Heating Hot Water System. Venturis or Orifice plates.

H. Liquid Flow Meters:

1. Insertion paddle wheel transmitter or Turbine flow meter.

I. Liquid Flow Switches:

1. Bellows type or Magnetic type.

J. Liquid Flow Transmitters:

1. Liquid pressure differential transmitter.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.

B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway.

D. Install ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."

C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTRUMENTS, GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Mounting Location:

1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid flow associated with individual air-handling units and connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
3. Install liquid and steam flow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
4. Install airflow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
6. Install instruments in liquid, and liquid-sealed-piped services below their process connection point. Slope tubing down to instrument with a slope of 2 percent.

#### B. Mounting Height:

1. Mount instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
2. Mount switches and transmitters, located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements, within a range of 42 to 72 inches ((1050 to 1800 mm)) above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
  - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches (1500 mm).

- C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

### 3.5 FLOW INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION

#### A. Airflow Sensors:

1. Install sensors in straight sections of duct with manufacturer-recommended straight duct upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Installed sensors shall be accessible for visual inspection and service. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of sensor, to allow service personnel to hand clean sensors.

B. Liquid Sensors:

1. Install sensors in straight sections of piping with manufacturer-recommended straight piping upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Alert manufacturer where installation cannot accommodate recommended clearance, and solicit recommendations for field modifications to installation, such as flow straighteners, to improve condition.
3. Install pipe reducers for in-line sensors smaller than line size. Position reducers at distance from sensor to avoid interference and impact on accuracy.
4. Install in-line sensors with flanges or unions to provide drop-in and -out installation.

C. Liquid Flow Meters:

1. Install meters in straight sections of piping with manufacturer-recommended straight piping upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Install pipe reducers for in-line meters smaller than line size. Install reducers at distance from meter to avoid interference and impact on accuracy.
3. Install in-line meters with flanges or unions to provide drop-in and -out installation.
4. Insertion Meters:
  - a. Install system process connections full size of meter connection, but not less than NPS 1 ((DN 25)). Provide stainless-steel bushing if required to mate to system connection.
  - b. Install meter in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement.
  - c. In applications where top-dead-center location is not possible due to field constraints, install meter at location along top half of pipe if acceptable by manufacturer for mounting orientation.

D. Liquid Switches:

1. Install system process connection full size of switch connection, but not less than NPS 1 ((DN 25)). Install stainless-steel bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
2. Install switch in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement.
3. In applications where top-dead-center location is not possible due to field constraints, install switch at location along top half of pipe if switch is acceptable by manufacturer for mounting orientation.

E. Transmitters:

1. Install airflow transmitters serving an air system in a single location adjacent to or within system control panel.
2. Install liquid flow transmitters, not integral to sensors, in vicinity of sensor. Where multiple flow transmitters serving same system are located in same room, co-locate transmitters by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

### 3.7 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Description:
  - 1. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
  - 4. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.
- B. Flow Instrument Checkout:
  - 1. Verify that sensors are installed correctly with respect to flow direction.
  - 2. Verify that sensor attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 3. Verify that processing tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
  - 4. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
  - 5. Verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Record videos on DVD disks.
- D. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923.14

## SECTION 230923.23 - PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Air-pressure sensors.
2. Air-pressure switches.
3. Air-pressure indicating transmitters.
4. Liquid-pressure switches.
5. Liquid-pressure transmitters
6. Liquid-pressure indicating transmitters.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.23.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 AIR-PRESSURE SENSORS

##### A. Duct Insertion Static Pressure Sensor:

1. Insertion length shall be at 4 inches (100 mm).
2. Sensor with four radial holes of 0.04-inch (1-mm) diameter.
3. Brass or stainless-steel construction.
4. Sensor with threaded end support, sealing washers and nuts.
5. Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 6) compression fitting.
6. Suitable for flat oval, rectangular, and round duct configurations.

B. Outdoor Static Pressure Sensor:

1. Provides average outdoor pressure signal.
2. Sensor with no moving parts.
3. Kit includes sensor, vinyl tubing mounting hardware.

C. Space Static Pressure Sensor for Wall Mounting:

1. 100-micron filter mounted in stainless-steel wall plate senses static pressure.
2. Wall plate provided with gasket and screws, and sized to fit standard single-gang electrical box.
3. Back of sensor plate fitted with brass barbed fitting for tubing connection.

D. Space Static Pressure Sensor for Recessed Ceiling Mounting:

1. Aluminum round plate with perforated center arranged to sense space static pressure. Exposed surfaces provided with brush finish.
2. Sensor intended for flush mount on face of ceiling with pressure chamber recessed in ceiling plenum.
3. Back of sensor plate fitted with multiple sensing ports, pressure impulse suppression chamber, airflow shielding, and 0.125-inch (3-mm) fitting for concealed tubing connection.
4. Performance: Within 1 percent of actual room static pressure in vicinity of sensor while being subjected to an air velocity of 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s) from a 360 degree radial source.

## 2.2 AIR-PRESSURE SWITCHES

A. Air-Pressure Differential Switch:

1. Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
  - a. Fan safety shutdown applications: Switch with manual reset.
2. Electrical Connections: Three-screw configuration, including one screw for common operation and two screws for field-selectable normally open or closed operation.
3. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
4. User Interface: Screw-type set-point adjustment located inside removable enclosure cover.
5. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
6. Enclosure:
  - a. Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

- c. Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.
7. Operating Data:
- a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120- to 480-V ac.
  - b. Pressure Limits:
    - 1) Continuous: 45 inches wg (11.2 kPa).
    - 2) Surge: 10 psig (68.9 kPa).
  - c. Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 180 deg F (Minus 34 to 82 deg C).
  - d. Operating Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
  - e. Repeatability: Within 3 percent.
  - f. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.3 AIR-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS

#### A. Air-Pressure Differential Indicating Transmitter:

1. Performance:
  - a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
  - b. Accuracy Including Hysteresis and Repeatability: Within 1 percent of full scale at 77 deg F (25 deg C).
  - c. Stability: Within 1 percent of full scale per year.
  - d. Overpressure: 10 psig (69 kPa).
  - e. Temperature Limits: 20 to 120 deg F (Minus 7 to 49 deg C).
  - f. Thermal Effects: 0.055 percent of full scale per degree F.
2. Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- ((10-mm-))high numeric characters.
3. Operator Interface:
  - a. Zero and span adjustments.
  - b. Selectable engineering units.
4. Analog Output Current Signal:
  - a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
  - b. Signal capable of operating into a 1200-ohm load.
5. Construction:
  - a. Plastic casing with clear plastic cover.
  - b. Integral fittings for plastic tubing connections on side of instrument case for high- and low-pressure connections.
  - c. Terminal block for wire connections.
  - d. Vertical plane mounting.
  - e. NEMA 250, Type 1.

- f. Nominal 4-inch (100-mm) diameter face.
- g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.

## 2.4 LIQUID-PRESSURE SWITCHES

### A. Liquid Gage Pressure Switch, Diaphragm Operated, Low Pressure:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
- b. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.
- c. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
- d. User Interface: External screw with visual set-point adjustment.
- e. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10).
- f. Enclosure:
  - 1) Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2) Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 3) Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.

#### 2. Operating Data:

- a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120-V ac.
- b. Pressure Limits:
  - 1) Range 1 to 30 psig (7 to 207 kPa): 60 psig (414 kPa).
  - 2) Range 10 to 125 psig (69 to 862 kPa): 160 psig (1103 kPa).
- c. Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 35 to 66 deg C).
- d. Operating Range: 10 to 250 psig (69 to 862 kPa).
- e. Deadband: Fixed.

#### 3. Pressure Chamber Material: Stainless steel.

#### 4. Diaphragm Material: Nylon or PTFE.

### B. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switch with Set-Point Indicator:

#### 1. Description:

- a. Brass or Type 316 stainless steel double opposing bellows operate to actuate a SPDT snap switch.
- b. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.
- c. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
- d. User Interface: Thumbscrew set-point adjustment with enclosed set-point indicator and scale.
- e. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/8 ((DN 3)).
- f. Enclosure:
  - 1) Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2) Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.



3) Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.

g. Operating Data:

- 1) Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120- to 240-V ac.
- 2) Pressure Limits: At least 5 times full-scale range, but not less than system design pressure rating.
- 3) Temperature Limits: Minus 10 to 180 deg F (Minus 23 to 82 deg C).
- 4) Operating Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
- 5) Deadband: Adjustable or fixed as required by application.

## 2.5 LIQUID-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS

A. Liquid-Pressure Indicating Transmitter:

1. Performance:

- a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
- b. Span: Adjustable plus or minus one milliamp, noninteractive.
- c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
- d. Pressure: Maximum operating pressure 2.5 times range.
- e. Temperature Limits: Zero to 175 deg F (Minus 18 to 79 deg C).
- f. Compensate Temperature Limits: 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 1 to 66 deg C).
- g. Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
- h. Response Time: 30 to 50 ms.
- i. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.

2. Analog Output Current Signal:

- a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
- b. Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.

3. Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- ((10-mm-))high numeric characters.

4. Operator Interface:

- a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
- b. Bleed screws on side of body, two screws on low-pressure side, and one screw on high-pressure side, for air in line and pressure cavity.

5. Construction:

- a. Aluminum and stainless-steel enclosure with removable cover.
- b. Wetted parts of transmitter constructed of 17-4 PH or 300 Series stainless steel.
- c. Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) process connections on side of instrument enclosure.
- d. Knock out for 1/2-inch (16-mm) nominal conduit connection on side of instrument enclosure.
- e. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
- f. NEMA 250, Type 4X.

- g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.
  - 6. Three-valve manifold. Construct manifold of brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Manifold shall have threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) process connections.
- B. Liquid-Pressure Differential Transmitter:
- 1. Performance:
    - a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
    - b. Span: Adjustable plus or minus one milliamp, noninteractive.
    - c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
    - d. Pressure: Maximum operating pressure 2.5 times range.
    - e. Temperature Limits: Zero to 175 deg F (Minus 18 to 79 deg C).
    - f. Compensate Temperature Limits: 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 1 to 66 deg C).
    - g. Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
    - h. Response Time: 30 to 50 ms.
    - i. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
  - 2. Analog Output Current Signal:
    - a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
    - b. Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
  - 3. Operator Interface:
    - a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
    - b. Bleed screws on side of body, two screws on low-pressure side, and one screw on high-pressure side, for air in line and pressure cavity.
  - 4. Construction:
    - a. Aluminum and stainless-steel enclosure with removable cover.
    - b. Wetted parts of transmitter constructed of 17-4 PH or 300 Series stainless steel.
    - c. Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) process connections on side of instrument enclosure.
    - d. Knock out for 1/2-inch (16-mm) nominal conduit connection on side of instrument enclosure.
    - e. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
    - f. NEMA 250, Type 4X.
    - g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.
  - 5. Three-valve manifold. Construct manifold of brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Manifold shall have threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) process connections.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not to overstress threads by using excessive force or oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.2 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Location:
  - 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing, cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
  - 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid pressure associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
  - 3. Install liquid pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  - 4. Install air-pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.

5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
  6. Install instruments (except pressure gages) in liquid, and liquid-sealed piped services below their process connection point. Slope tubing down to instrument with a slope of 2 percent.
  7. Install instruments in dry gas and noncondensable vapor piped services above their process connection point. Slope process connection lines up to instrument with a minimum slope of 2 percent.
- B. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.
- C. Duct Pressure Sensors:
1. Install sensors using manufacturer's recommended upstream and downstream distances.
  2. Unless indicated on Drawings, locate sensors approximately 50 percent of distance of longest hydraulic run. Location of sensors shall be submitted and approved before installation.
  3. Install mounting hardware and gaskets to make sensor installation airtight.
  4. Route tubing from the sensor to transmitter.
  5. Use compression fittings at terminations.
  6. Install sensor in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  7. Support sensor to withstand maximum air velocity, turbulence, and vibration encountered to prevent instrument failure.
- D. Outdoor Pressure Sensors:
1. Install roof-mounted sensor in least-noticeable location and as far away from exterior walls as possible.
  2. Locate wall-mounted sensor in an inconspicuous location.
  3. Submit sensor location for approval before installation.
  4. Verify signal from sensor is stable and consistent to all connected transmitters. Modify installation to achieve proper signal.
  5. Route outdoor signal pipe full size of sensor connection to transmitters. Install branch connection of size required to match to transmitter.
  6. Install sensor signal pipe with dirt leg and drain valve below roof penetration.
  7. Insulate signal pipe with flexible elastomeric insulation as required to prevent condensation.
  8. Connect roof-mounted signal pipe exposed to outdoors to building grounding system.
- E. Air-Pressure Differential Switches:
1. Install air-pressure sensor in system for each switch connection. Install sensor in an accessible location for inspection and replacement.
  2. A single sensor may be used to share a common signal to multiple pressure instruments.
  3. Install access door in duct and equipment to access sensors that cannot be inspected and replaced from outside.
  4. Route NPS 3/8 (DN 12) tubing from sensor to switch connection.
  5. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.

6. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
7. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.
8. Install switches adjacent to system control panel if within 50 feet (15 m); otherwise, locate switch in vicinity of system connection.

F. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switches:

1. Where process connections are located in mechanical equipment room, install switch in convenient and accessible location near system control panel.
2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate switch near system control panel.
3. Where multiple switches serving same system are installed in same room, install switches by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection, but not less than NPS 1/2 (DN 15). Install stainless-steel bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to switch.
6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each switch connection.
8. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
9. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
10. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.

G. Liquid-Pressure Transmitters:

1. Where process connections are installed in mechanical equipment room, install transmitter in convenient and accessible location near system control panel.
2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate transmitter near system control panel.
3. Where multiple transmitters serving same system are installed in same room, install transmitters by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection, but not less than NPS 1/2 (DN 15). Install stainless-steel bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to transmitter.
6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each transmitter connection.
8. Do not mount transmitters on equipment.
9. Install in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage and hinder accurate operation.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

### 3.5 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate pressure instrument demonstration video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Record videos on DVD disks.
- D. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923.23

## SECTION 230923.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Air temperature sensors.
2. Air temperature switches.
3. Air temperature RTD transmitters.
4. Liquid temperature sensors.
5. Liquid temperature switches.
6. Indicators for temperature transmitters.
7. CO2 Sensors for Air Quality Control.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.27.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Environmental Conditions:

1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
  - a. If instrument alone cannot meet requirement, install instrument in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
2. Instruments and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Instrument's installed location shall dictate following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 2.
  - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4.
  - c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - e. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
  - f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 12.
    - 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 2.
  - g. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 2.
  - h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 4.

## 2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

### A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F (Minus 46 to 135 deg C).
  - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F (zero deg C) within 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C).
  - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C).
  - d. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter Requirements:
  - a. Transmitter required for each 100-ohm RTD.
  - b. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

### B. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors:



1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches ((450 mm) long).
5. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
6. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
7. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch ((16-mm) trade size.)

C. Platinum RTD, Air Temperature Averaging Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)
3. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.
4. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.
5. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-inch (100-mm) radius.
6. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel.
7. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
8. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
9. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch ((16-mm) trade size.)

D. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

E. Thermal Resistors (Thermistors): Common Requirements:

1. 10,000 ohms at 25 deg C and a temperature coefficient of 23.5 ohms/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F (Minus 46 to 135 deg C).
  - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 77 deg F (25 deg C) within 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C).
  - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C).
  - d. Drift: Within 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C) over 10 years.
  - e. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter optional, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

F. Thermistor, Single-Point Duct Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)

2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches ((450 mm) long).
4. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2- inch (16-mm) trade size.

G. Thermistor Averaging Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)
2. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.
3. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.
4. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-inch (100-mm) radius.
5. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel.
6. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
7. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
8. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

H. Thermistor Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F ((Minus 45 to 135 deg C).)
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
5. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

I. Indicators. Where indicators are noted on plans/drawings for transmitters. Provide Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- ((10-mm-)) high numeric character.

## 2.3 AIR TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

A. Thermostat and Switch for Low Temperature Control in Duct Applications:

1. Description:
  - a. Two-position control.
  - b. Field-adjustable set point.
  - c. Manual reset.
  - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Performance:
  - a. Operating Temperature Range: 15 to 55 deg F (Minus 9 to 13 deg C).
  - b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F (2.8 deg C), non-adjustable and additive.

- c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: Minus 20 to 140 deg F (Minus 11 to 60 deg C).
  - d. Sensing Element Maximum Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
  - e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
  - f. Current: 16 FLA.
  - g. Switch Type: Two SPDT snap switches operate on coldest 12-inch (300-mm) section along element length.
3. Construction:
- a. Vapor-Filled Sensing Element: Nominal 20 feet (6 m) long.
  - b. Dual Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit and Celsius visible on face.
  - c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
  - d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
  - f. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.
- B. Thermostat and Switch for High Temperature Control in Duct Applications:
- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Two-position control.
    - b. Field-adjustable set point.
    - c. Manual reset.
    - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Performance:
    - a. Temperature Range: 100 to 160 deg F (38 to 71 deg C).
    - b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F (2.8 deg C).
    - c. Ambient Temperature: Zero to 260 deg F (Minus 18 to 127 deg C).
    - d. Voltage: 120-V ac.
    - e. Current: 16 FLA.
    - f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
  - 4. Construction:
    - a. Sensing Element: Helical bimetal.
    - b. Enclosure: Metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - c. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
    - d. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

## 2.4 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
- B. House electronics in NEMA 250 enclosure.

1. Duct: Type 2.
2. Outdoor: Type 4.
3. Space: Type 1.

C. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch ((16-mm) trade size.)

D. Functional Characteristics:

1. Input:
  - a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
  - b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
2. Span (Adjustable):
  - a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F (4 to 32 deg C).
  - b. Supply Air Cooling and Heating: 40 to 120 deg F (4 to 49 deg C).
  - c. Supply Air Cooling Only: 40 to 90 deg F (4 to 32 deg C).
  - d. Supply Air Heating Only: 40 to 120 deg F (4 to 49 deg C).
  - e. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F (10 to 38 deg C).
  - f. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F (10 to 38 deg C).
  - g. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F (Minus 40 to 60 deg C).
  - h. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F (Minus 40 to 60 deg C).
3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc .
4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F (28 deg C).
5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.

E. Performance Characteristics:

1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

## 2.5 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SENSORS, COMMERCIAL GRADE

A. RTD:

1. Description:
  - a. Platinum with a value of 100 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
  - b. Encase RTD in a stainless-steel sheath with a 0.25-inch (6-mm) OD.
  - c. Sensor Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches ((100, 150, or 200 mm)) as required by application.
  - d. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2 ((DN 15).)

- e. Two-stranded copper lead wires.
- f. Powder-coated steel enclosure, NEMA 250, Type 4.
- g. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch ((16-mm) trade size.)
- h. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1) Range: Minus 40 to 210 deg F (Minus 40 to 99 deg C).
  - 2) Interchangeable Accuracy: Within 0.54 deg F (0.3 deg C) at 32 deg F (zero deg C).

B. Thermowells:

- 1. Stem: Straight shank formed from solid bar stock.
- 2. Material: Brass or stainless steel.
- 3. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
- 4. Sensor Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
- 5. Bore: Sized to accommodate sensor with tight tolerance between sensor and well.
- 6. Furnish thermowells installed in insulated pipes and equipment with an extended neck.
- 7. Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches ((100, 150, or 200 mm))as required by application.
- 8. Thermowells furnished with heat-transfer compound to eliminate air gap between wall of sensor and thermowell and to reduce time constant.

## 2.6 LIQUID TEMPERATURE TRANSMITTERS, COMMERCIAL GRADE

A. House electronics in NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.

B. Enclosure Connection: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

C. Functional Characteristics:

- 1. Input: 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
- 2. Default Span (Adjustable):
  - a. Heating Hot Water: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to 38 deg C).
- 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
- 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F (28 deg C).
- 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together. Each matched sensor and transmitter set shall include factory calibration data traceable to NIST.

D. Performance Characteristics:

- 1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
- 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
- 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

E. Indicators. Where indicators are noted on plans/drawings for transmitters. Provide Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- ((10-mm-)) high numeric character.

2.7 TEMPERATUE AND CARBON DIOXIDE (CO2) SENSORS FOR AIR QUALITY - HOUSING UNITS.

- A. Honeywell C7772 Wall Plate Temperature Sensor or approved equal. Provide with a Remote readout in Housing Unit Mechanical Room.
- B. Wall Module shall have a default temperature setpoint range of 55° to 85° F (10° to 35° C); configurable for other ranges. Designed for mounting on a standard two by four inch or 60 mm diameter junction box.
- C. Temperature Sensor Accuracy:  $\pm 0.36^{\circ}$  F at 77°F ( $\pm 0.2^{\circ}$  at 25° C). Operating Temperature Ambient Rating: 30° to 110°F (-1° to 43° C) Relative Humidity: 5% to 95% non-condensing.
- D. Carbon Dioxide Sensor. Duct Mounted Honeywell C7232B1006/U or approved equal. Accuracy:  $\pm(30$  PPM +3% of measured value) from 0 to 2000PPM, OR  $\pm 60$  PPM at 600 and 1000 PPM. CO2 sensor is calibrated at the factory. No CO2 calibration required for the life of the product.
- E. Wall/Duct Module shall have a two-wire polarity insensitive wiring that includes both power and communication.

2.8 TEMPERATUE SENSORS FOR AIR QUALITY – CORE BUILDING PUBLIC SPACES.

- A. Honeywell C7772 Wall Plate Temperature Sensor or approved equal.
- B. Wall Module shall have a default temperature setpoint range of 55° to 85° F (10° to 35° C); configurable for other ranges. Designed for mounting on a standard two by four inch or 60 mm diameter junction box.
- C. Temperature Sensor Accuracy:  $\pm 0.36^{\circ}$  F at 77°F ( $\pm 0.2^{\circ}$  at 25° C). Operating Temperature Ambient Rating: 30° to 110°F (-1° to 43° C) Relative Humidity: 5% to 95% non-condensing.
- D. Wall Module shall have a two-wire polarity insensitive wiring that includes both power and communication.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Air Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. Duct, 100-ohm platinum RTD.
  - 2. Outdoor, 100-ohm platinum RTD.
  - 3. Space, 100-ohm platinum RTD.

B. Air Temperature Transmitters:

1. Duct, Air temperature RTD transmitter.
2. Outdoor, Air temperature RTD transmitter.
3. Space, Air temperature RTD transmitter.

C. Liquid Temperature Sensors:

1. Heating Hot water System, Liquid temperature sensor, commercial grade.

D. Liquid and Temperature Transmitters:

1. Heating Hot Water System, Liquid temperature transmitter, commercial grade.

E. Indicators. Where indicators are noted on plans/drawings for transmitters. Provide Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- ((10-mm-)) high numeric character.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment..

C. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."

C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS

#### A. Mounting Location:

##### 1. Roughing In:

- a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
- b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
  - 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
  - 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
- c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.

2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handling units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
3. Install liquid and steam temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

#### B. Special Mounting Requirements:

1. Protect products installed outdoors from solar radiation, building and wind effect with stand-offs and shields constructed of Type 316 stainless.
2. Temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting substrate shall be isolated with an insulating barrier located between instrument and substrate to eliminate effect. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.

#### C. Mounting Height:

1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a



range of 42 to 72 inches (1.1 to 1.6 m) above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.

- a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches (1500 mm).
- D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.
- E. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
  2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
  3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
  4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
  5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.
- F. Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Mount sensor in a discrete location facing north.
  2. Protect installed sensor from solar radiation and other influences that could impact performance.
  3. If required to have a transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location indoors.
- G. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed in center of duct cross section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) in sensor length.
  2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence from outdoor or mixed air.
  3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
  4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor at accessible and serviceable location.
- H. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Install averaging-type air temperature sensor for temperature sensors located within air-handling units, similar equipment, and large ducts with air tunnel cross-sectional area of 20 sq. ft. (1.86 sq. m) and larger.
  2. Install sensor length to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area. Install multiple sensors where required to maintain the minimum coverage.
  3. Fasten and support sensor with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep sensor taut throughout entire length.

4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter in an accessible and serviceable location.

I. Low-Limit Air Temperature Switch Installation:

1. Install multiple low-limit switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel.
2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element taut throughout entire length.
3. Mount switches outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy access for switch set-point adjustment and manual reset.
4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

J. Liquid Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Assembly shall include sensor, thermowell.
2. For pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger, install sensor and thermowell length to extend into pipe between 50 to 75 percent of pipe cross section.
3. For pipe smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100):
  - a. Install reducers to increase pipe size to NPS 4 ((DN 100))at point of thermowell installation.
  - b. For pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80), thermowell and sensor may be installed at pipe elbow or tee to achieve manufacturer-recommended immersion depth in lieu of increasing pipe size.
  - c. Minimum insertion depth shall be 2-1/2 inches (65 mm).
4. Install matching thermowell.
5. Fill thermowell with heat-transfer fluid before inserting sensor.
6. Tip of spring-loaded sensors shall contact inside of thermowell.
7. For insulated piping, install thermowells with extension neck to extend beyond face of insulation.
8. Install thermowell in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement. If top dead center location is not possible due to field constraints, install thermowell at location along top half of pipe.
9. For applications with transmitters, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location from floor.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

### 3.7 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- D. Verify location and length.
- E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections.:
  - 1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature instruments.

END OF SECTION 230923.27

## SECTION 230993 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. See "Sequences of Operation" on Design Drawings for basic requirements.
- B. This Section includes additional information for control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment not indicated on design drawings.
- C. See Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) Systems for HVAC" for control equipment and devices and for submittal requirements.

#### 1.2 HEATING AND COOLING MODES

- A. Heating or Cooling mode shall be automatically selected by the BAS system. Initial setting for Heating mode "ON" shall be when the outside air temperature is at or below 60 deg F (adjustable). Cooling mode shall be enabled "ON" when the Outside air temperature is at or above 65 deg F (adjustable). The system shall remain on until all zones are cooled to the occupied setpoint temperature.

#### 1.3 HEATING CONTROL SEQUENCES

- A. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Control:
  - 1. Input Device: Resistance temperature sensor.
  - 2. Output Device: Output to DDC System, DDC to Enable/Disable Boilers.
  - 3. Action: Enable and sequence boilers to maintain heating-water supply temperature. Individual boilers to modulate from 10 to 100%.
  - 4. Display:
    - a. Heating-water supply temperature.
    - b. Heating water return temperature.
    - c. Boiler Status On/Off/Alarm.
- B. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Reset:
  - 1. Input Device: Outdoor-air sensor.
  - 2. Output Device: DDC system software.
  - 3. Action: Reset heating-water supply temperature in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature for the following conditions:
    - a. 190 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 25 deg F. Adjustable in BAS system.
    - b. 120 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 60 deg F. Adjustable in BAS system.

4. Display:
  - a. Hot Water Temperature Reset Schedule.
  - b. Current Calculated HW Reset Temperature.
  - c. Outdoor-air temperature.
  - d. Heating-water supply temperature.
  - e. Heating-water supply temperature set point.
  - f. Heating-water return temperature.

C. Control Primary Boiler Circulating Pump(s):

1. Input Device: DDC system.
2. Output Device: DDC system command to starter relay.
3. Action: Energize pump(s) at outdoor-air temperatures below 60 deg F
4. Display:
  - a. Outdoor-air temperature.
  - b. Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

D. Secondary Loop Pumping System; System shall be enabled on with a call for heating by the DDC system.

1. Input Device: DDC System.
2. Output Device: Secondary Pump P-1.
3. Action: Energize Pump and VFD as required to maintain Secondary System pumping loop differential pressure of 40'. Adjustable based on TAB results.
4. Display:
  - a. P-1 Pump On/Off
  - b. P-1 VFD %.
  - c. System Differential pressure.
  - d. Secondary Pumping system discharge pressure.
  - e. Secondary Pumping system discharge temperature.
  - f. Secondary Pumping system discharge flow (gpm).
  - g. Secondary Pumping system return pressure.
  - h. Secondary Pumping system return temperature.

1.4 AIR-HANDLING-UNIT HOUSING UNITS 1,2,3 CONTROL SEQUENCES

A. Start and Stop Supply Fan(s):

1. AHU unit.
  - a. Input Device: DDC System building in "Occupied" Mode.
  - b. Input Device: CO2 sensor PPM 600 or greater for Outside Air Damper Control (adjustable).
  - c. Input Device: Room Temperature Sensor.
2. Enable: Smoke Control:
  - a. Input Device: Duct-mounted smoke detector, located in supply and return air.

- b. Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system alarm.
    - c. Action: Allow start if duct is free of products of combustion.
    - d. Action: Send Alarm to Fire Alarm system if smoke detected.
  - 3. Initiate: Occupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Input Device: CO2 Sensors PPM 600 or greater (adjustable).
    - c. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
    - d. Action: Energize fan(s).
    - e. Output Device: Outside Air damper. Modulate to maintain 600 ppm CO2 (adjustable).
  - 4. Display: Supply-fan on-off indication.
  - 5. Display: CO2 PPM Level.
- B. AHU Heating Duct Furnace Operation:
- 1. Occupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Output Device: Binary output to Duct Furnace controller.
    - c. Action: Energize Duct Furnace Operation.
  - 2. Supply-Air Temperature:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and electronic temperature sensor.
    - b. Output Device: Modulating Duct Furnace Stages (2 Stage)
    - c. Action: Maintain room temperature set point of 70 deg F (adjustable).
  - 3. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and outdoor-air temperature.
    - b. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
    - c. Action: Open Heating Control Valve to maintain night setback temperature of 60 deg F in Room.
  - 4. Display:
    - a. Supply air-temperature indication.
    - b. Supply air temperature set point.
    - c. Coil control-valve position.
- C. Mixed-Air Control:
- 1. Occupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Input Device: CO2 Sensor
    - c. Output Device: DDC system output.

- d. Action: Enable control of Outside air damper to maintain 600 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> (adjustable).
2. Minimum Position:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
    - c. Action: Set outdoor-air dampers to closed position.
  3. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
    - c. Action: Position outdoor air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.
  4. Economizer mode – Mixed Air Temperature. Cooling Mode. Outdoor temperature less than return air temperature.
    - a. Input:
      - 1) Input Device: Outside Air-temperature sensor. Mixed Air Temperature sensor
      - 2) Location: Mixed-air plenum.
      - 3) Transference: DDC controller.
    - b. Output:
      - 1) Device: Analog output.
      - 2) Location: Damper section.
      - 3) Transference: Damper actuator(s).
    - c. Action:
      - 1) Modulate mixed air dampers to maintain air-temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C), or lowest temperature possible.
  5. Display:
    - a. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
    - b. Mixed-air-temperature set point.
    - c. Mixed-air damper position.
- D. AHU Cooling Coil Operation:
1. Occupied Time Schedule:
    - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
    - b. Output Device: Binary output.
    - c. Action: Enable DX Cooling Coil and Condensing Unit control.
  2. Supply-Air Temperature:

- a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
  - b. Output Device: Normally operate DX Cooling Coil and Outdoor Condensing Unit 2 stage operation.
  - c. Action AHU: Maintain supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).
  - d. Action AHU. Maintain room temperature set point of 70 deg F.
3. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
- a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
  - b. Output Device: Binary output.
  - c. Action: Enable AHU to maintain night setback temperature of 80 deg F (Adjustable).
4. Display:
- a. Supply air-temperature indication.
  - b. Supply air-temperature set point.
- E. Coordination of Air-Handling Unit Sequences: Ensure that mixed-air, heating, and cooling-coil controls have common inputs and do not overlap in function.
- F. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal:
- 1. DDC system graphic.
  - 2. DDC system on-off indication.
  - 3. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
  - 4. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
  - 5. Supply-fan on-off indication.
  - 6. Supply-fan airflow rate.
  - 7. Return air temperature indication.
  - 8. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
  - 9. Outside Air damper position.
  - 10. Return Air damper position.
  - 11. Supply duct discharge air-temperature indication.
  - 12. Supply duct discharge air-temperature set point.
  - 13. Room temperature indication.
  - 14. Room temperature set point.
  - 15. CO2 Level PPM Set point.
  - 16. CO2 Level PPM indication.
- 1.5 CORE BUILDING RTU CONTROL SEQUENCE (Existing RTU DX Cooling with Gas Heat in RTU and VAV Box Hot Water Reheat in Zones)
- A. RTU Unit Occupied Time Schedule:
- 1. Enable startup, initiation, and control.
  - 2. Energize unit on occupied/unoccupied cycle.
  - 3. Energize unit on day/night cycle.
  - 4. Energize unit on duty cycle.
  - 5. Energize return-air fan(s) 30 seconds after supply fans are energized.
  - 6. Do not enable mixed-air control during morning warm-up period.



- a. Unoccupied: Position outdoor-air and relief-air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.
  - 7. Enable control of heating during morning warm-up period.
  - 8. Return heating control to normal position when unit is cycled on.
  - 9. Do not enable cooling control during morning warm-up period.
  - 10. Allow start if airstream is free of products of combustion.
  - 11. Signal alarm if fan fails to start as commanded.
- B. Supply Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:
- 1. Fan Speed Control:
    - a. Maintain constant supply-duct static-pressure set point of 2.0 “ (Adjustable).
    - b. Set-Point Reset (for Systems with DDC of Individual Zone Terminals): Reset static-pressure set point based on the zone requiring the most pressure; reset set point lower until one zone damper is nearly wide open.
    - c. Set variable-frequency drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
  - 2. Fan Airflow: Report supply-duct airflow.
  - 3. High Pressure: When static pressure rises above excessive-static-pressure set point of 3.0”:
    - a. Stop fan.
    - b. Signal alarm.
- C. Return Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:
- 1. Maintain constant airflow offset between supply- and return-air fans.
  - 2. Set variable-frequency drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
- D. Filters: Signal alarm on high-pressure differential conditions.
- E. Coordination of RTU Unit Sequences: Ensure that preheat, mixed-air, heating-coil, and cooling-coil controls have common inputs and do not overlap in function.
- F. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:
- 1. DDC system graphic.
  - 2. DDC system on-off indication (operating or not operating).
  - 3. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
  - 4. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
  - 5. Supply-fan on-off indication (operating or not operating).
  - 6. Supply duct static-pressure indication.
  - 7. Supply duct static-pressure set point.
  - 8. Supply-fan airflow rate.
  - 9. Supply-fan speed.
  - 10. Return-fan on-off indication (operating or not operating).
  - 11. Space static-pressure indication.
  - 12. Space static-pressure set point.
  - 13. Return-fan airflow rate.

14. Return-fan speed.
15. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
16. Mixed-air damper position.
17. Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
18. Filter high-air-pressure drop set point.
19. Supply-air-temperature indication.
20. Supply-air-temperature set point.
21. Space temperature indication.
22. Space temperature set point.

## 1.6 TERMINAL UNIT OPERATING SEQUENCE

### A. Variable-Air-Volume Terminal Air Units with Hydronic Coils:

1. Occupancy: Report occupancy and enable occupied temperature set point.
  - a. Occupied Cooling Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
  - b. Occupied Heating Temperature: 70 deg F (24 deg C).
  - c. Unoccupied Cooling Temperature: 85 deg F (24 deg C).
  - d. Unoccupied Heating Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).
2. Space Temperature: Modulate damper and valve to maintain space temperature set points.
  - a. Occupied Cooling Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
  - b. Occupied Heating Temperature: 70 deg F (24 deg C).
  - c. Unoccupied Cooling Temperature: 85 deg F (24 deg C).
  - d. Unoccupied Heating Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).
  - e. Modulate damper actuator from full open to minimum position.
  - f. When damper is at minimum position, modulate reheat coil valve from closed to open.
  - g. If occupied space temperature is not maintained with valve open, modulate damper actuator from minimum position to 100 percent open.
  - h. Reverse the sequence for full heating to full cooling.

### B. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

1. DDC system graphic.
2. DDC system on-off indication (operating or not operating).
3. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
5. Variable-Air-Volume Terminal Air Units with Hydronic Coils:
  - a. Space/area served.
  - b. Space occupied/unoccupied.
  - c. Space temperature indication.
  - d. Space temperature set point.
  - e. Space cooling and heating temperature set point, occupied.
  - f. Space cooling and heating temperature set point, unoccupied.

- g. Air-damper position as percentage open.
- h. Control-valve position as percentage open.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993

## SECTION 231123 – NATURAL GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

##### B. Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### B. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

##### A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

4. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

- a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.

1. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
  - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig (34.5 kPa).

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches ((1830 mm).)

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.

2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
  3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
- D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
  5. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  7. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  9. Service: Suitable for propane-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- C. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
  1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  2. Plug: Bronze.

3. Ends: Threaded, socket, as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
5. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. Service: Suitable for propane-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC UNIONS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
- B. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
- C. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
- D. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

## 2.6 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
  2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

## 2.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.



- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- Q. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- R. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment.
- S. Do not use gas piping as grounding electrode.
- T. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- U. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing or copper connector.
- B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 3. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test, inspect, and purge gas according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Natural gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### 3.8 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- C. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - 1. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 Flanged.

END OF SECTION 231123

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
  - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
  - 2. Condensate-Drawing Piping.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping Systems.
  - 2. Chemical treatment.
- B. Welding certificates.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - 2. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).

#### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) or ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C).
- B. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
  - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - 3. Facings: Raised face.

## 2.4 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
  - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.

## 2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- H. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

## 2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - 1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

## 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## 2.8 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
  - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Type L (Type B) or Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
  - 1. Type L (Type B) or Type M (Type C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
- C. Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- D. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges or flange kits.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.



- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
  3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).
  2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).
  3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m).
  4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m).
  5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m).
  6. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m).
- D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  3. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  4. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  5. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  6. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  7. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 3. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- B. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

#### B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

#### C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

## SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:
  - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
  - 2. Makeup-water piping.
  - 3. Condensate-drain piping.
  - 4. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
  - 2. Air-control devices.
  - 3. Hydronic specialties.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
  - 2. Makeup-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
  - 3. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - 4. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).

5. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

## 2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC".
- C. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.
  1. Body: Bronze or brass.
  2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  3. Seat: Brass.
  4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  5. Diaphragm: EPT.
  6. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
  7. Inlet Strainer: Removable without system shutdown.
  8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
- D. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
  1. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
  2. Piston and Spring Assembly: Corrosion resistant, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
  3. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
  4. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
  5. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
  6. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
  7. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C).

## 2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Manual Air Vents:
  1. Body: Bronze.
  2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
  4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
  5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
  6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 150-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature. Diaphragm or Bladder type as indicated on Mechanical Schedule. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

C. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

## 2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install flow control valves in locations noted on design drawings.
- C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- D. Install safety valves at locations noted on design drawings. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

- E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- C. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- D. Install expansion tanks per manufacturer's instructions. Vent and purge air from hydronic system and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

## SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. See Mechanical Schedule on Design Drawings for basis of design and capacity.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
  - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
  - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
- B. Warranty.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Bell and Gossett, Gould's, Grundfos, Taco or approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet and threaded companion-flange connections.
  - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve or Stainless steel.



4. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
- D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
    - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
    - c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
    - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics: Per Mechanical Schedule.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps on galvanized steel frame mounted to concrete floor or with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
  1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 ALIGNMENT

- A. Perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of constant speed pumps.
- F. Install Y-type strainer and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 232123

## SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. All new condensing units/cooling coils shall be provided with new refrigerant lines, valves, and specialties. The existing systems may not be reused.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig (2068 kPa).
  - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

#### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M, Type A or B), or ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
  4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

## 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  4. Seat: Nylon.
  5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
  1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  3. Operator: Rising stem.
  4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- C. Check Valves:
  1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
  3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  5. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  6. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig (3.4 kPa).
  7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
  2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Copper spring.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
  2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
  6. Superheat: Adjustable.
  7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig (4820 kPa).
- H. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
  3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- I. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
  3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
  4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).

6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

K. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. End Connections: Socket.
5. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
6. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR Type L (B), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- B. Hot-Gas, Liquid Lines and Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, Type K (A), or Type L (B), drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- B. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- C. Except as otherwise indicated, install packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

- D. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- E. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- F. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install per manufacturer instructions where provided.
  - 2. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 3. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 4. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- G. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- H. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- I. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- J. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- K. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."



- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Braze Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install the following pipe attachments:
1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
  3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- B. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  2. NPS 5/8 (DN 18): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  3. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1800 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  4. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  5. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and greater: Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  6. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  7. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2700 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  8. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  9. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod, 1/2 inch (13 mm).

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.

- a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
- b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
- c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
- d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers (67 Pa). If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig (14 kPa).
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

## SECTION 232500 - HVAC WATER TREATMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
  - 1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
  - 2. Chemical treatment test equipment.
  - 3. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.
- B. Engage owners existing water treatment contractor for chemicals and start-up. Walter Louis Fluid Technologies, contact representative Roger Smith (217) 223-2017. Walter Louis will provide all the chemicals. Contractor responsible for coordination with chemical supplier.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including dual-temperature water shall have the following water qualities:
  - 1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
  - 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
  - 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
  - 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
  - 5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
  - 6. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
  - 7. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals: Water-Treatment Program report: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
  - 1. Capacity: 5 gal. (19 L).
  - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig.

#### 2.2 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including dual-temperature water, and equipped with the following:
  - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
  - 3. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping.
  - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
  - 3. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. At six-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- E. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
  - 1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
  - 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
  - 3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
  - 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232500

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, and vibration isolation.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  - 2. Structural members to which duct will be attached.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals,

and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).



## 2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- E. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors.

### 3.6 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
  - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  - 4. Coils and related components.
  - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.

6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

D. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel.

B. Supply/Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air Handling Units, Furnaces, and Terminal Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

C. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
  - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.

d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

D. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - b. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

E. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.

END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Flange connectors.
4. Turning vanes.
5. Duct-mounted access doors.
6. Flexible connectors.
7. Duct accessory hardware.
8. Duct Smoke Detectors.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control-damper installations..
  - d. Smoke Detectors – Duct Mounted.
  - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

## 2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Description: Gravity balanced.
- B. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm (10 m/s).
- C. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, minimum 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.025-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- F. Blade Action: Parallel.
- G. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked or Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- H. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
  - 2. Diameter: minimum 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- L. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.



3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
  - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage (1.0 mm) minimum.
  - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches (152 mm) minimum.
6. Screen Material: Stainless steel.
7. Screen Type: Bird.
8. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

### A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Standard leakage rating.
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, minimum 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
6. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

## 2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.6 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.

## 2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
  - 1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm)] Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.8 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch (1.3-mm) carbon steel.
- C. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

- D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

## 2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## 2.11 DUCT SMOKE DETECTORS: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

- A. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
- B. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - 1. Primary status.
  - 2. Device type.
  - 3. Present average value.
  - 4. Present sensitivity selected.
  - 5. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
  - 1. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.

2. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
3. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  1. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  2. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  3. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  4. Control devices requiring inspection.
  5. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).

4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
  4. Test Smoke Detectors and verify proper function with existing Fire Alarm System.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 235216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, factory-fabricated and -assembled, gas-fired, condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment." Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Complete and submit ASME CSD-1 Manufacturer's and Installing Contractor's Report to the Missouri State Fire Marshall and arrange/complete any required inspections. Any inspection permits and inspection fees related to any required Missouri State Fire Marshall inspections are to be paid for by the Contractor. The Contractor is also responsible for any non-compliance fees assessed by the Missouri State Fire Marshall.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Water-Tube Condensing Boilers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HIGH EFFICIENCY CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Manufacturers: Provide Lochinvar High Efficiency Boiler(s) as indicated on the Mechanical Schedule or approved equal by.
  - 1. Fulton Boiler Works, Inc.
  - 2. Laars NeoTherm
  - 3. Weil McLain
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, water-tube condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base; including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water heating service only.
- C. Heat Exchanger: Finned-copper primary and stainless-steel secondary heat exchangers.
- D. Combustion Chamber: Stainless steel, sealed.
- E. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft drawing from gas premixing valve.
- F. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
  - 1. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- G. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- H. Ignition: Silicone carbide hot-surface ignition that includes flame safety supervision and 100 percent main-valve shutoff.
- I. Integral Circulator: Cast-iron body and stainless-steel impeller sized for minimum flow required in heat exchanger.
- J. Casing:

1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
3. Finish: Textured epoxy.
4. Insulation: Minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
6. Mounting base to secure boiler.

K. Characteristics and Capacities: See Mechanical Schedule.

## 2.2 TRIM

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.
- G. Circulation Pump: Non-overloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

## 2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230923 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- B. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
  1. Control transformer.
  2. Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
  3. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 25 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 190 deg F; at 60 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 120 deg F.
    - a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.
- C. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.



1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
  2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be automatic-reset type.
  3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch field mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
  4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- D. Control Safety Device. Interface. Boiler shall be provided with remote contact for the Safe Shut down of the unit in accordance with CSD-1 Standard for Control and Safety Devices for Automatically Fire Boilers per ASME.
- E. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm, low water level alarm.
    - b. Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment.
  2. A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

## 2.4 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
  2. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
  3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.
  4. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs.
  5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
  6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

## 2.5 VENTING KITS

- A. Exhaust Kit: Complete system, CPVC Schedule 80 pipe, ANSI/ASTM F441, per manufacturer requirements, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.

- B. Combustion-Air Intake: Reuse existing intake/flue duct work for new boiler air intakes. Extend as required to connect to boiler intake connections.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install boilers on existing concrete equipment base(s).
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.
- F. Install control wiring for CSD Safety Shut down.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
- D. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service.
- E. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- F. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

- G. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- H. Boiler Venting:
  - 1. Install flue venting kit and combustion-air intake.
- I. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- J. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
    - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers.

END OF SECTION 235216

## SECTION 23513.16 GAS-FIRED DUCT HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired duct heaters.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of gas-fired duct heater.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  - 2. Items penetrating roof and the following:
    - a. Duct, vent, and gas piping rough-ins and connections.
- B. Warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace heat exchanger of gas-fired duct heater that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Provide Reznor Duct Furnace as indicated on the Mechanical Schedule or approved equal by.
  - 1. Trane.
  - 2. Modine
  - 3. Sterling
  - 4. Dayton

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedule Drawing M-601.
  - 1. Heat Exchanger: Aluminized steel.
  - 2. Burner Material: Aluminized steel with stainless-steel inserts.
  - 3. Venting: Gravity vented.
  - 4. Gas Control Valve: Two stage.
  - 5. Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency: Minimum 80 percent.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; and complying with ANSI Z83.8/CSA 2.6.
- B. Fuel Type: Design burner for natural gas having characteristics same as those of gas available at Project site.
- C. Indoor External Housing: Steel cabinet with integral support inserts and removable bottom arranged to serve as drain pan.
  - 1. External Casings and Cabinets: Baked enamel over corrosion-resistant-treated surface.
- D. Internal Casing: Aluminized steel, arranged to contain airflow, with duct flanges at inlet and outlet.
- E. Controls: Regulated redundant gas valve containing pilot solenoid valve, electric gas valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff all in one body.
  - 1. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark with flame sensor.
  - 2. Fan Thermal Switch: Operates fan on heat-exchanger temperature.
  - 3. Vent Flow Verification: Flame rollout switch
  - 4. Control transformer.
  - 5. High Limit: Thermal switch or fuse to stop burner.

6. Thermostat: Two-stage type with duct-mounted sensor and 50 to 90 deg F (10 to 32 deg C) operating range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and connect gas-fired duct heaters and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54, applicable local codes and regulations, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from substrate using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to gas-fired duct heaters, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Gas Piping: Comply with Section 231123 "Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to gas train inlet; provide union with enough clearance for burner removal and service.
- D. Vent Connections: Reconnect to existing vent connections.
- E. Duct Connections: Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- F. Electrical Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in electrical Sections.
  1. Install electrical devices furnished with heaters but not specified to be factory mounted.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  2. Verify bearing lubrication.
  3. Verify proper motor rotation.
  4. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
    - a. Test procedures used.
    - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
    - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

- B. Gas-fired duct heater will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Adjust burner and other unit components for optimum heating performance and efficiency.

#### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gas-fired duct heaters.

END OF SECTION 235513.16

## SECTION 237313 - MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Constant-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.
2. See Mechanical Schedule for Unit Capacities.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.
2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
3. Fans:
  - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
  - c. Fan construction and accessories.
  - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
5. Filters with performance characteristics.
6. Variable Frequency Drive.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
- B. Warranty.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ARI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to ARI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by ARI.



- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnson Controls/York Solutions Air Handling units per Mechanical Schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. McQuay International
  - 2. Trane; American Standard Inc.
  - 3. Carrier.
  - 4. Engineered Air.

### 2.2 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings:
  - 1. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
  - 2. Casing Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
  - 3. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant.
  - 4. Factory Finish for Steel and Galvanized-Steel Casings: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
  - 5. Dual Wall Insulated.
- B. Casing Insulation and Adhesive:
  - 1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or Type II per manufacturer standard.
  - 2. Location and Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of section panels downstream from, and including, the cooling-coil section.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.

- c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service-air velocity.
  - 3. Location and Application: Encased between outside and inside casing.
- C. Inspection and Access Panels and Access Doors:
  - 1. Panel and Door Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, single- or double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
  - 2. Inspection and Access Panels:
    - a. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    - b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - c. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  - 3. Access Doors:
    - a. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    - b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - c. Size: At least 18 inches (450 mm) wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches (1500 mm).
  - 4. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Inspection and access doors.
    - b. Access Section: Doors.
    - c. Coil Section: Inspection and access panel.
    - d. Damper Section: Inspection and access Doors.
    - e. Filter Section: Inspection and access Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
    - f. Mixing Section: Doors.
    - g. Humidifier Section: Doors.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - 1. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
    - a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
    - b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.
  - 2. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
  - 3. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.

- a. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 (DN 25).
  - 4. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
  - 5. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Mounting Frame: Formed galvanized-steel channel or structural channel supports, designed for low deflection, welded with integral lifting lugs.

### 2.3 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- 1. Shafts: Designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, and with field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
    - b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- B. Centrifugal Fan Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
- 1. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  - 2. Horizontal-Flanged, Split Housing: Bolted construction.
  - 3. Housing for Supply Fan: Attach housing to fan-section casing with metal-edged flexible duct connector.
  - 4. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets; select metal compatible with casing.
    - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
      - 1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
      - 2) Fabric Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
      - 3) Fabric Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- C. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- D. Fan Shaft Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with a rated life of 50,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
- E. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.
1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 5-hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
  3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
  4. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.1046-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick, 3/4-inch (20-mm) diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
- F. Internal Vibration Isolation: Fans shall be factory mounted with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm).
- G. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  2. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
  5. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
- H. Variable Frequency Drive: Comply with specification 262923. AHU to be used in a constant volume application. No external control requirements. VFD to be mounted accessible for maintenance personnel.

## 2.4 COIL SECTION

### A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with ARI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.

## 2.5 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

### A. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.

2. Provide minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
3. Provide filter holding frames arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

B. Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
2. Thickness: Minimum 2 inch.
3. Merv (ASHRAE 52.2): 11.
4. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
5. Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, hinged, and with pull and retaining handles.

C. Filter Gage:

1. 3-1/2-inch- (90-mm-) diameter, diaphragm-actuated dial in metal case.
2. Vent valves.
3. Black figures on white background.
4. Front recalibration adjustment.
5. 2 percent of full-scale accuracy.
6. Range: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa)
7. Accessories: Static-pressure tips with integral compression fittings, 1/4-inch (6-mm) aluminum or plastic tubing, and 2- or 3-way vent valves.

2.6 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS. SEE MECHANICAL SCHEDULE.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.
- B. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."
- C. DX Cooling Coil: See Mechanical Schedule for Capacities and ratings.
  1. Coil Type: **Self-draining**.
  2. Piping Connections: Sweat **same end** of coil.
  3. Tube Material: **Copper**.
  4. Tube Thickness: .016 **inches**.
  5. Fin Type: Corrugated.
  6. Fin Material: **Aluminum**.
  7. Fin Spacing: 10 **Insert fins per inch**.
  8. Fin Thickness: .006 **inches**.
  9. Fin and Tube Joint: **Mechanical bond**.
  10. Headers:

- a. Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
  - b. Provide insulated cover to conceal headers exposed outside casings.
- 11. Frames: Channel frame, **galvanized steel**.
  - 12. Number of Rows: 6.
  - 13. Coil Working-Pressure Ratings: Suitable for Refrigerant used.
  - 14. Refrigerant Type: R410A.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

##### A. Equipment Mounting:

- 1. Install air-handling units on existing concrete floors in mechanical rooms as indicated.

##### B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

##### C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

##### D. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gages on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

##### E. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

##### F. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.

##### G. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

##### H. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

##### I. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping".

##### J. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

END OF SECTION 237313

## SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common electrical installation requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

#### 2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry



1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260500

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN.
- C. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

#### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

## 2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- C. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- E. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- G. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- G. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- H. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.

### 3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- C. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- D. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- E. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- F. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

- G. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- H. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- I. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- J. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.5 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 260519

Replace HVAC and Boiler Multiple Assets

H2305-01

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER  
CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

260519 - 5

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

## 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller.
- B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Receptacle circuits.
  - 3. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 4. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 6. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- B. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.



### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells.
    - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

##### B. Related Requirements:

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data:
- For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- ##### A. Listing and Labeling:
- Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- ##### B. GRC:
- Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- ##### C. ARC:
- Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- ##### D. IMC:
- Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- ##### E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit:
- PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- ##### F. EMT:
- Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- ##### G. FMC:
- Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
- ##### H. LFMC:
- Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

- I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
  - 2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.
  - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
  - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- E. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.
- F. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- G. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

## 2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

## 2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
- D. Tele-Power Poles:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel with ivory baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Fittings and Accessories: Dividers, end caps, covers, cutouts, wiring harnesses, devices, mounting materials, and other fittings shall match and mate with tele-power pole as required for complete system.

## 2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy or aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  2. Type: Semi-adjustable.
  3. Shape: Rectangular.
  4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round or rectangular.
1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
- L. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- M. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
  3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- N. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
  6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC or IMC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
  3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC or LFNC.
  4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated.
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT or RNC.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
    - a. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - b. Mechanical rooms.
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT or RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
  5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC IMC.
  7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel or nonmetallic in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel cast-metal fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- D. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- E. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- G. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
  - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
- H. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
  - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
  - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- K. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35-mm) trade size and insulated

throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- N. Surface Raceways:
  - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
  - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.
- P. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Q. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
  - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per degree C) of temperature change for PVC conduits.
  - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.



- R. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- S. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- T. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between the box and cover plate or the supported equipment and box.
- U. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- V. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- W. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- X. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- Y. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- Z. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

Replace HVAC and Boiler Multiple Assets

H2305-01

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR  
ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

260533 - 9

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Identification of power and control cables.
  2. Identification for conductors.
  3. Equipment identification labels.
  4. Underground-line warning tape.
  5. Warning labels and signs.
  6. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- F. Nowhere in these plans and specifications are handwritten permanent markers approved for labels on equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ARMORED AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:
  1. Black letters on an orange field.
  2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.

## 2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
- C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

## 2.3 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.
- B. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- C. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## 2.6 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

### A. Tape:

1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical utility lines.
2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

### B. Color and Printing:

1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE,
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.

### C. Tag: Type I:

1. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
3. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
4. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf (133.4 N), and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).

## 2.7 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

### A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

### B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

### A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- E. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Install labels at 30-foot (10-m) maximum intervals.
- B. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- C. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  - 1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    - c. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Receptacle switches.
  - 4. Shunt trip switches.
  - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 6. Enclosures.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge fuse interiors to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - 4. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### 2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

### 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- B. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- C. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Instantaneous trip.
  - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.



3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I<sup>2</sup>t response.
- D. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- E. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  2. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  5. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.

2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262816

## SECTION 262923 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- E. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.
  - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

#### A. General Requirements for VFCs:

1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7.

#### B. Application: **variable torque**.

#### C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1 motors.
2. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

#### E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to **60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range**; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

#### F. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus **10** percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding **3** percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
4. Minimum Efficiency: **96** percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: **96** percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than **32 deg F (0 deg C)** and not exceeding **104 deg F (40 deg C)**.
7. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
8. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding **3300 feet (1000 m)**.
9. Overload Capability: **1.5** times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
10. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus **5** percent.
11. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to **15** kHz.
12. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

#### G. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, **32** bit, isolated from all power circuits.

- H. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
  - 1. Signal: Electrical.
- I. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
  - 1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
  - 2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
  - 3. Acceleration: **0.1 to 999.9** seconds.
  - 4. Deceleration: **0.1 to 999.9** seconds.
  - 5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
- J. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
  - 1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
  - 2. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
  - 3. Under- and overvoltage trips.
  - 4. Inverter overcurrent trips.
  - 5. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
  - 6. Critical frequency rejection, with **three** selectable, adjustable deadbands.
  - 7. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
  - 8. Loss-of-phase protection.
  - 9. Reverse-phase protection.
  - 10. Short-circuit protection.
  - 11. Motor-overtemperature fault.
- K. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

## 2.2 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

- A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
  - 1. Power on.
  - 2. Run.
  - 3. Overvoltage.
  - 4. Line fault.
  - 5. Overcurrent.
  - 6. External fault.
- B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
  2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least one level of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
    - a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
- C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
1. Running log of total power versus time.
  2. Total run time.
  3. Fault log, maintaining last **four** faults with time and date stamp for each.
- D. Indicating Devices: Digital display mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:
1. Output frequency (Hz).
  2. Motor speed (rpm).
  3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
  4. Motor current (amperes).
  5. Motor torque (percent).
  6. Fault or alarming status (code).
  7. PID feedback signal (percent).
  8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
  9. Set point frequency (Hz).
  10. Motor output voltage (V ac).
- E. Control Signal Interfaces:
1. Electric Input Signal Interface:
    - a. A minimum of **two** programmable analog inputs: **0- to 10-V dc, 4- to 20-mA dc**.
    - b. A minimum of **six** multifunction programmable digital inputs.
  2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:
    - a. 0- to 10-V dc.
    - b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
    - c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
    - d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
  3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of **one** programmable analog output signal(s) (**0- to 10-V dc, 4- to 20-mA dc**, which can be configured for any of the following:
    - a. Output frequency (Hz).
    - b. Output current (load).
    - c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
    - d. Motor torque (percent).

- e. Motor speed (rpm).
- f. Set point frequency (Hz).

## 2.3 BYPASS SYSTEMS

- A. Bypass Operation: Manually transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
- B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.
- C. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller[; **with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode**].
  - 1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, **IEC**-rated contactor.
  - 2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, **IEC**-rated contactor.
  - 3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
- D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: **Full-voltage (across-the-line)** type.
  - 1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
  - 2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
  - 3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
  - 4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
    - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    - b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - 5. Control Circuits: **120-V ac**; obtained from **integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses**, with **CPT** of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - a. CPT Spare Capacity: 100 VA.
  - 6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: **Type 1**.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Push Buttons: **Unguarded**.
  - 2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
  - 3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than **79 inches (2000 mm)** above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices **and facility's central-control system**. Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
  - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.



### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. **Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.**
  - 2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - 4. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  - 5. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 6. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 7. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify **Owner** before increasing settings.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 262923

Replace HVAC and Boiler Multiple Assets

H2305-01

VARIABLE-FREQUENCY  
MOTOR CONTROLLERS

262923 - 8